

PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT
Dated January 8, 2019

NEW ISSUE - BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY

ENHANCED/UNENHANCED RATING: Moody's - Applied For
PSF Guarantee - Applied For
(See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE
PROGRAM" and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION -
Municipal Bond Rating" herein)

In the opinion of Bond Counsel (defined below), assuming continuing compliance by the District (defined below) after the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Order (defined below) and subject to the matters set forth under "TAX MATTERS" herein, interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Bonds and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.

\$98,600,000*

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Williamson County, Texas)
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

Dated Date: February 1, 2019

Due: February 1, as shown on page -ii- herein

The "Liberty Hill Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019" (the "Bonds"), as shown on page -ii- herein, are direct obligations of the Liberty Hill Independent School District (the "District") and are payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property within the District. The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), as amended, Texas Education Code, Chapter 1371, as amended, of the Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1371"), an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 (the "Election"), and an order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the District on December 17, 2018. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1371, the Board, in the Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials (each an "Authorized Official") to execute an approval certificate (the "Approval Certificate") establishing the final pricing terms for the Bonds.

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from February 1, 2019 (the "Dated Date"), will be payable until stated maturity or prior redemption on February 1 and August 1 of each year, commencing August 1, 2019, and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in principal denominations of \$5,000, or integral multiples thereof within a stated maturity. The Bonds will be issued in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially Zions Bancorporation, National Association, Houston, Texas, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used (i) for the purpose of designing, constructing, renovating, improving, upgrading, updating, acquiring, and equipping school facilities in the District (and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities), the purchase of the necessary sites for school facilities, and the purchase of new school buses, and (ii) to pay for professional services associated with the costs of issuance of the Bonds. See "SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS" herein.

The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.

**For Maturity Schedule, Principal Amounts, Interest Rates, Initial Yields,
CUSIP Numbers, and Redemption Provisions for the Bonds, see page -ii- herein**

The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued and received by the initial purchasers thereof named below (the "Underwriters") and are subject to the approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. See "LEGAL MATTERS" herein for a discussion of Bond Counsel's opinion. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their legal counsel, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas. It is expected that the Bonds will be available for delivery through the services of DTC, New York, New York, on or about February 14, 2019.

RAYMOND JAMES

HILLTOPSECURITIES

PIPER JAFFRAY & CO.

RBC CAPITAL MARKETS

* Preliminary, subject to change.

**STATED MATURITIES, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS, INTEREST RATES,
INITIAL YIELDS, CUSIP NUMBERS, AND REDEMPTION PROVISIONS**

\$98,600,000*

**LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Williamson County, Texas)
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

CUSIP No. Prefix 530574⁽¹⁾

Stated Maturity February 1	Principal Amount (\$)*	Interest Rate (%)	Initial Yield (%)	CUSIP No. Suffix⁽¹⁾
2020	50,000			
2021	75,000			
2022	250,000			
2023	250,000			
2024	325,000			
2025	450,000			
2026	545,000			
2027	685,000			
2028	800,000			
2029	875,000			
2030	975,000			
2031	1,050,000			
2032	1,150,000			
2033	1,250,000			
2034	1,350,000			
2035	100,000			
2036	800,000			
2037	880,000			
2038	920,000			
2039	960,000			
2040	1,000,000			
2041	5,100,000			
2042	6,550,000			
2043	6,000,000			
2044	6,500,000			
2045	7,000,000			
2046	12,250,000			
2047	12,850,000			
2048	13,475,000			
2049	14,135,000			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on and after February 1, 2028, in whole or in part, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 1, 2027 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If two or more serial bonds of consecutive maturity are combined into one or more “term” Bonds (the “Term Bonds”) by the Underwriters, such Term Bonds will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Order. (See “THE BONDS - Redemption Provisions of the Bonds” herein.)

* Preliminary, subject to change.

⁽¹⁾ CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of the owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the Underwriters, the District, or the Financial Advisor is responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
301 Forrest Street
Liberty Hill, Texas 78642

BOARD OF TRUSTEES

Name	Position	Years Served	Term Expires May	Occupation
Clay Cole	President	12	2020	Administration
Vickie Peterson	Vice President	2	2019	Program Manager
Scott Lindquist	Secretary	3	2019	Business Owner
David Nix	Trustee	11	2021	Attorney
Clint Stephenson	Trustee	2	2020	Business Owner
Anthony Buck	Trustee	4	2021	Emergency Management Consultant
Kathy Major	Trustee	1	2021	Retired Administrator

ADMINISTRATION - FINANCE CONNECTED

Name	Title	Total Years Experience	Total Years With District
Steven Snell	Superintendent	24	*
Jennifer Hanna	Chief Financial Officer	19	8

* Mr. Snell was hired by the District on December 4, 2018, to replace Dr. Rob Hart who will retire from the District effective January 31, 2019.

CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

West, Davis & Company, LLP Austin, Texas	Certified Public Accountants
Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP San Antonio, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. San Antonio, Texas	Financial Advisor

For Additional Information Contact:

Duane L. Westerman, Senior Managing Director
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.
1020 N.E. Loop 410, Suite 640
San Antonio, Texas 78209
Phone (210) 832-9760
Fax (210) 832-9794
Email: dwesterman@samcocapital.com

Jennifer Hanna, CFO
Liberty Hill Independent School District
301 Forrest Street
Liberty Hill, Texas 78642
Phone (512) 260-5570
Fax (512) 260-5587
Email: jhanna@libertyhill.txed.net

USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended (the "Rule") and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by the Rule.

No dealer, broker, salesman, or other person has been authorized by the District to give any information or to make any representation with respect to the Bonds, other than as contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by either of the foregoing.

This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Bonds by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation, or sale. The information set forth herein has been obtained from sources which are believed to be reliable but is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as a representation by the Underwriters.

The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement. The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder will under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement.

The Underwriters have provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriters have reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THESE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION FOR THE PURCHASE THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE UNDERWRITERS MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THIS ISSUE AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriters make any representation or warranty with respect to the information contained in this Official Statement regarding (i) DTC or its book-entry-only system described under the caption "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" as such information has been provided by DTC, and (ii) the Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program described in the caption "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" as such information has been provided by the Texas Education Agency.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement, nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds, is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION WITH RESPECT TO THE BONDS.

(The remainder of this page has been left blank intentionally.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

COVER PAGE.....	i	Taxable Property, Exemptions and	
MATURITY SCHEDULE.....	ii	Agricultural Exclusions	24
BOARD OF TRUSTEES	iii	Levy and Collection of Taxes	26
ADMINISTRATION - FINANCE CONNECTED	iii	Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate	26
CONSULTANTS & ADVISORS	iii	The District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies	27
USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT	iv	The Texas Tax Code	
TABLE OF CONTENTS	v	as Applied to the District.....	27
OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY INFORMATION	vi	STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL	
INTRODUCTION.....	1	DISTRICTS IN TEXAS	28
THE BONDS		CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM	29
General Description	1	THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM	
Authority for Issuance	1	AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT	32
Security for Payment.....	1	TAX RATE LIMITATIONS	32
Use of Proceeds	2	DEBT LIMITATIONS	33
Permanent School Fund Guarantee.....	2	EMPLOYEE BENEFITS, RETIREMENT PLAN AND	
Payment Record	2	OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS	33
Legality	2	INVESTMENT POLICIES	34
Delivery	2	LEGAL MATTERS	
Redemption Provisions of the Bonds	2	Legal Opinions and No-Litigation Certificate	36
Selection of Bonds for Redemption	2	Litigation	37
Notice of Redemption	2	TAX MATTERS	
Defeasance	3	Opinion	37
Amendments	3	Tax Changes	38
Default and Remedies	4	Ancillary Tax Consequences	38
SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS.....	4	Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds	38
REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE		Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds	38
Paying Agent/Registrar	4	LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO	
Successor Paying Agent/Registrar	5	SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS	39
Record Date	5	CONTINUING DISCLOSURE	39
Registration, Transferability and Exchange	5	OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION	
Limitation on Transfer of Bonds	5	Authenticity of Financial Information	41
Replacement Bonds	5	Registration and Qualification	
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM	6	of Bonds for Sale.....	41
THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND		Municipal Bond Rating	41
GUARANTEE PROGRAM.....	7	Financial Advisor.....	41
AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES		Underwriting	41
Property Tax Code and		Forward Looking Statements.....	42
County Wide Appraisal District.....	24	Information from External Sources	42
Ad Valorem Taxation	24	Authorization of the Official Statement.....	42
SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT			APPENDIX A
GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT AND ITS ECONOMY			APPENDIX B
AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS			APPENDIX C
FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL			APPENDIX D

The cover page hereof, the appendices hereto, and any addenda, supplement or amendment hereto are part of this Official Statement.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY INFORMATION

The following information is qualified in its entirety by more detailed information and financial statements appearing elsewhere in this Official Statement:

THE DISTRICT	The Liberty Hill Independent School District (the "District") is located in Williamson County, Texas. The District is approximately 109.740 square miles in area and serves a population of approximately 18,073. The District was created under State statute and is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
THE BONDS	The Bonds mature on February 1 in each of the years 2020 through 2049,* inclusive. Interest on the Bonds shall accrue from the Dated Date (identified below) and is payable semi-annually on February 1 and August 1, commencing on August 1, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption.
DATED DATE	February 1, 2019.
REDEMPTION	The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on and after February 1, 2028, in whole or in part, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 1, 2027 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If two or more serial bonds of consecutive maturity are combined into one or more "term" Bonds (the "Term Bonds") by the Underwriters, such Term Bonds will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Order. See "THE BONDS - Redemption Provisions of the Bonds" herein.
SECURITY FOR THE BONDS	The Bonds constitute direct obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property located therein, without legal limitation as to rate or amount.
TAX MATTERS	In the opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. See "TAX MATTERS" and "APPENDIX D - Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel."
PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE	The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.
PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is Zions Bancorporation, National Association, Houston, Texas.
MUNICIPAL BOND RATING	The District has made application to Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") for a contract rating on the Bonds based on the guarantee thereof by the Texas Permanent School Fund. Moody's generally rates all bonds guaranteed by the Texas Permanent School Fund "Aaa." See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Rating" herein.
FUTURE BOND ISSUES	The District does not anticipate the issuance of additional tax-supported debt in the next twelve months except for potentially issuing refunding obligations for debt service savings.
PAYMENT RECORD	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
DELIVERY	When issued, anticipated to occur on or about February 14, 2019.
LEGALITY	The Bonds are subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. See "APPENDIX D - Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel" herein.

* Preliminary, subject to change.

PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

relating to

\$98,600,000*

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Williamson County, Texas)

UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

INTRODUCTION

This Official Statement of Liberty Hill Independent School District (the "District") is provided to furnish certain information in connection with the sale of the District's \$98,600,000* Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds").

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the appendices hereto, provides certain information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request from the District and, during the offering period, from the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 1020 N.E. Loop 410, Suite 640, San Antonio, Texas 78209, by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as to its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of the Official Statement pertaining to the Bonds will be filed by the Underwriters with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board through its Electronic Municipal Markets Access ("EMMA") system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE" herein for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis. Capitalized terms used, but not defined herein, shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order (defined below).

THE BONDS

General Description

The Bonds are dated February 1, 2019 (the "Dated Date") and will accrue interest from the Dated Date, and such interest shall be payable on February 1 and August 1 in each year, commencing August 1, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts and will bear interest at the rates set forth on page -ii- of this Official Statement.

Interest on the Bonds is payable to the registered owners appearing on the bond registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar relating to the Bonds (the "Bond Register") on the Record Date (identified below) and such interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar (i) by check sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Bond Register or (ii) by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. The principal of the Bonds is payable at stated maturity or prior redemption upon their presentation and surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Bonds will be issued only in fully registered form in any integral multiple of \$5,000 principal for any one maturity.

Initially the Bonds will be registered and delivered only to Cede & Co., the nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein. **No physical delivery of the Bonds will be made to the owners thereof.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, as long as the Bonds are held in the Book-Entry-Only System, principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar to Cede & Co., which will make distribution of the amounts so paid to the participating members of DTC for subsequent payment to the Beneficial Owners (defined herein) of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Authority for Issuance

The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), as amended, Texas Education Code, Chapter 1371, as amended, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1371"), an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 (the "Election"), and an order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the District on December 17, 2018. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1371, the Board, in the Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials (each an "Authorized Official") to execute an approval certificate (the "Approval Certificate") establishing the final pricing terms for the Bonds.

Security for Payment

The Bonds constitute direct obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property located therein, without any legal limitation as to rate or amount.

* Preliminary, subject to change.

Use of Proceeds

The proceeds of the Bonds (which may include certain net premium allocations) are anticipated to represent the total amount of voted bonds (described below) approved at the Election. Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District anticipates that it will have no voted but unissued bonds as further described below. See "VALUATION AND DEBT DATA - Authorized but Unissued General Obligation Bonds" attached hereto as APPENDIX A.

A summary of the bonds authorized at said election is as follows:

Purpose	Amount Authorized	Amount Previously Issued	Amount This Issue	Amount Remaining
Designing, constructing, renovating, improving, upgrading, updating, acquiring, and equipping school facilities (and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities), and the purchase of necessary sites for school facilities, and the purchase of new school buses	\$98,600,000	\$ -0-	\$98,600,000*	\$ -0-**

* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds and certain net premium allocations.

** Preliminary, subject to change.

Permanent School Fund Guarantee

The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.

Payment Record

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

Legality

The Bonds are subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, as Bond Counsel. The legal opinion of Bond Counsel will accompany the bond certificates deposited with DTC or be printed on the Bonds. The form of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel appears in APPENDIX D attached hereto.

Delivery

When issued; anticipated to occur on or about February 14, 2019.

Redemption Provisions of the Bonds

The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on February 1, 2028, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 1, 2027 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. Additionally, if two or more serial bonds of consecutive maturity are combined into one or more "term" Bonds (the "Term Bonds") by the Underwriters, such Term Bonds will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Order.

Selection of Bonds for Redemption

If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

Notice of Redemption

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the holder appearing on the Bond Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER ONE OR MORE BONDHOLDERS FAILED TO RECEIVE SUCH NOTICE. NOTICE HAVING BEEN SO GIVEN, THE BONDS CALLED FOR REDEMPTION SHALL BECOME DUE AND PAYABLE ON THE SPECIFIED REDEMPTION DATE, AND NOTWITHSTANDING THAT ANY

BOND OR PORTION THEREOF HAS NOT BEEN SURRENDERED FOR PAYMENT, INTEREST ON SUCH BOND OR PORTION THEREOF SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as the Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the Beneficial Owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on such notice or any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the Beneficial Owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or Beneficial Owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.)

Defeasance

Any Bond will be deemed paid and shall no longer be considered to be outstanding within the meaning of the Order when payment of the principal of and interest on such Bond to its stated maturity or redemption date will have been made or will have been provided by depositing with the Paying Agent/Registrar or an authorized escrow agent, (1) cash in an amount sufficient to make such payment, (2) Government Obligations (defined below) of such maturities and interest payment dates and bearing such interest as will, without further investment or reinvestment of either the principal amount thereof or the interest earnings therefrom, be sufficient to make such payment, or (3) a combination of cash and Government Obligations. The foregoing deposits shall be certified as to sufficiency by an independent accounting firm, the District's Financial Advisor, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other qualified financial institution (as provided in the Order).

The Order provides that "Government Obligations" means (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the District authorizes the defeasance, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, and (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by Texas law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Bonds. An Authorized Official may limit these eligible securities as deemed necessary, in connection with the sale of the Bonds. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities acquired to defease any Bonds, or those for any other Government Obligations, will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, the District has the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Defeasance will automatically cancel the Permanent School Fund Guarantee with respect to those defeased Bonds.

Amendments

The District may amend the Order without the consent of or notice to any registered owners in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the registered owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Order; except that, without the consent of all of the registered owners of the Bonds then outstanding, no such amendment, addition, or rescission may (1) change the date specified as the date on which the principal of or any installment of interest on any Bond is due and payable, reduce the principal amount, the redemption price therefor, or the rate of interest thereon, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the percentage of the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held for consent to any amendment, addition, waiver, or rescission.

Default and Remedies

If the District defaults in the payment of principal, interest or redemption price on the Bonds when due, or if it fails to make payments into any fund or funds created in the Order, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the State fails to honor the Permanent School Fund Guarantee as hereinafter discussed, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel District officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the registered owners upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and, accordingly, all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006) that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Chapter 1371, as amended, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1371"), which pertains to the issuance of public securities by issuers such as the District, permits the District to waive sovereign immunity in the proceedings authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Notwithstanding its reliance upon the provisions of Chapter 1371 in connection with the issuance of the Bonds (as further described under the caption "THE BONDS - Authority for Issuance"), the District has not waived the defense of sovereign immunity with respect thereto. Because it is unclear whether the Texas legislature has effectively waived the District's sovereign immunity from a suit for money damages beyond Chapter 1371, Bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the United States Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it (see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due). The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors and general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

Sources of Funds:

Par Amount of Bonds	\$ _____
[Net] Original Issue Reoffering Premium on the Bonds	
Accrued Interest	
Total Sources	\$ _____

Uses of Funds:

Deposit to Construction Fund	\$ _____
Deposit to Bond Fund	
Underwriters' Discount	
Costs of Issuance	
Contingency	
Total Uses	\$ _____

REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE

Paying Agent/Registrar

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is Zions Bancorporation, National Association, Houston, Texas. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in multiples of \$5,000 or integral multiple thereof for any one stated maturity, and principal and interest will be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on, or redemption price of, the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day when banking institutions in the city where the Paying

Agent/ Registrar is located are authorized to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a day, and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the date payment was due.

Successor Paying Agent/Registrar

The District covenants that until the Bonds are paid it will at all times maintain and provide a paying agent/registrar. In the Order, the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, the new Paying Agent/Registrar must accept the previous Paying Agent/Registrar's records and act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District must be a bank, trust company, financial institution or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District will promptly cause a notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, which notice shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

Record Date

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the registered owner entitled to receive a payment of interest on a Bond is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five (5) business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the Bond Register at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

Registration, Transferability and Exchange

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System shall be discontinued, printed certificates will be issued to the registered owners of the Bonds and thereafter the Bonds may be transferred, registered, and assigned on the Bond Register only upon presentation and surrender of such printed certificates to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bond or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. New Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like kind and aggregate principal amount and having the same maturity or maturities as the Bond or Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein for a description of the system to be utilized initially in regard to ownership and transferability of the Bonds.

Limitation on Transfer of Bonds

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar are required (1) to make any transfer or exchange during a period beginning at the opening of business 45 days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (2) to transfer or exchange any Bonds so selected for redemption when such redemption is scheduled to occur within 45 calendar days; provided however, that such limitation of transfer is not applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond.

Replacement Bonds

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System has been discontinued, and any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond of like kind and in the same maturity and amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and in substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen, or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence satisfactory to establish to the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with bond or indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must comply with such other reasonable regulations as the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe and pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

The following describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC (defined below) while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Underwriters believe the source of such information to be reliable but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption, or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption, or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.

The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York, will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered security certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments from over 100 countries that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation, and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has an S&P Global Ratings' rating of "AA+." The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com.

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry-only system for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed. Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on the payment date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC [nor its nominee], the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry system has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriters takes any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of This Official Statement

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System

In the event that the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by DTC or the use of the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by the District, printed physical Bond certificates will be issued to the respective holders and the Bonds will be subject to transfer, exchange and registration provisions as set forth in the Order and summarized under the caption "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE" above.

THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

History and Purpose

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine

leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2017, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 21% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2018, preliminary, unaudited distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$246.92 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,235.8 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, as filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2017 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2017 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2017, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2017 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2017 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund,

which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/ and with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org. Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml. A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the

allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2018, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 40.54% in public market equity investments; 13.25% in fixed income investments; 10.37% in absolute return assets; 9.12% in private equity assets; 7.48% in real estate assets; 6.79% in risk parity assets; 5.96% in real return assets; 6.21% in emerging market debt; and 0.28% in unallocated cash. August 31, 2018 data is unaudited, which is subject to adjustment.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

Management and Administration of the Fund

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a

"Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by

the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to rollback of a portion of the multiplier increase, which became effective in late March 2018. Based upon the unaudited cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2018, the State Law Capacity increased from \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017 to \$118,867,137,998 on August 31, 2018 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, \$117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/, which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

The School District Bond Guarantee Program

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

The School District Bond Guarantee Program

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement

of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 21, 2018 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.5%. As of November 5, 2018, there were 177 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 754 charter school campuses operating under such charters. Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed

charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBGP Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in

funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of September 30, 2018, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 68.04% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program (based on unaudited data). SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.50% in September 2018, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 55.81%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBGP Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times market value to 3.50 times, and the rollback became effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of September 30, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.50% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

Charter District Risk Factors

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At September 30, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$7,164,188.

Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. The composition of any final programs that may be implemented cannot be predicted, and are likely to be subject to future State legislative and administrative actions, available amounts of federal and private disaster relief for affected schools, and other factors. For fiscal year 2018, TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings, and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Ratings" herein.

Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value ⁽¹⁾	Market Value ⁽¹⁾
2014	\$27,596,692,541	\$38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018 ⁽²⁾	33,962,040,017	43,918,273,565

⁽¹⁾ SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

⁽²⁾ At August 31, 2018, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.43 million, \$240.90 million, \$3,082.83 million, \$7.58 million, and \$4,247.36 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$1,870.22 million, \$642.00 million, \$3,164.04 million, \$4.71 million, and \$4,247.36 million, respectively. At September 30, 2018, the PSF had a book value of \$33,937,270,391 and a market value of \$43,724,325,619. August 31, 2018 and September 30, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount ⁽¹⁾
2014	\$58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069 ⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

⁽²⁾ As of August 31, 2018 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$123,361,625,817, of which \$44,280,724,748 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2018, there were \$79,080,901,069 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and using the IRS Limit at that date of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), 98.21% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 1.79% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. August 31, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category⁽¹⁾

Fiscal Year	School District Bonds		Charter District Bonds		Totals	
	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount
2014 ⁽²⁾	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$ 302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018 ⁽³⁾	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069

⁽¹⁾ Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

⁽²⁾ Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

⁽³⁾ At September 30, 2018 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$79,828,771,069 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,265 school district issues, aggregating \$78,395,836,069 in principal amount and 45 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,432,935,000 in principal amount. At September 30, 2018, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$3,109,688,908 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment). 2018 data is unaudited, which is subject to adjustment.

Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein, and will be updated upon the release of the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2017, the Fund balance was \$41.4 billion, an increase of \$4.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2017, were 11.96%, 8.26% and 5.49%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, three-year,

and five-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 10.35%, 7.19%, and 7.77%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long-term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2017, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2017, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$3.31 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$3.83 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2017, totaled \$1.35 billion in real estate investments and \$1.54 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2017, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.042 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 16.30%, 12.80%, 19.04%, and 26.28%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 1.61% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 7.32%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 10.52% and 16.35%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 8.77%, while real return assets yielded 2.38%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 11.84%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 11.96% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, out-performing the benchmark index of 10.66% by approximately 130 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 10.35% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017.

For fiscal year 2017, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$5.4 billion, an increase of \$2.7 billion from fiscal year 2016 earnings of \$2.7 billion. This increase reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2017, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, increased 30.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in PSF(SLB) operational costs and generally larger quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.06 billion and \$1.06 billion, respectively. There was no contribution to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2017.

At the end of the 2017 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$74.27 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 6,980 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$166.3 billion in principal amount. During the 2017 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program increased by 14, or 0.4%. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$6.0 billion or 8.7%. The guarantee capacity of the Fund increased by \$13.9 billion, or 13.9%, during fiscal year 2017 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund and the increase in the cost multiplier (from 3.25 to 3.50, as discussed above) used to calculate Program capacity.

2011 Constitutional Amendment

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a \$2.2 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$92.2 million, which represents a 2.981% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$220.97, based on 2018 preliminary student average daily attendance of 5,004,998. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB transfer \$10 to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and \$45 million in fiscal year 2021.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

Other Events and Disclosures

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2017, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance and Grants/Texas Permanent School Fund/Texas Permanent School Fund Disclosure Statement - Bond Guarantee Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on November 16, 2018, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org, and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

Annual Reports

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

Event Notices

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

Availability of Information

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at www.emma.msrb.org.

Limitations and Amendments

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial

owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

SEC Exemptive Relief

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES

Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Williamson Central Appraisal District, (the "Appraisal District") is responsible for appraising property within the county that comprises the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

Ad Valorem Taxation

The Bonds are payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied on all taxable property within the District, without legal limit as to rate or amount. Reference is hereby made to the Tax Code for identification of property subject to taxation, property exempt or which may be exempted from taxation, the appraisal of property for taxation purposes, and the procedures and limitations applicable to the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes. Among other features, the Tax Code contains the following provisions with respect to the assessment of property and the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes:

- (1) a single appraisal district in each county to appraise property for taxation purposes for all taxing units located wholly or partly within the county;
- (2) subject to certain exceptions, all property to be assessed at 100% of its market value and the assessment of property on the basis of a percentage of its appraised value is prohibited;
- (3) requires an "effective tax rate" and "rollback tax rate" to be annually calculated and the holding of a referendum election whenever the proposed tax rate exceeds the roll back tax rate; and
- (4) the value of property is generally assessed for purposes of taxation on January 1 of each year and taxes levied each year generally become due and payable on October 1 and become delinquent on January 31 of the year following the year in which the taxes are imposed.

Taxable Property, Exemptions and Agricultural Exclusions

All real property located in the taxing unit and certain personal property is taxable property unless exempt by law. With certain exceptions, intangible personal property is not taxable property. Excluding open space land (ranch and farm land) and timberland that may be taxed on the basis of its productive capacity, property subject to taxation is to be taxed at 100% of its market value. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Effective January 1, 2016, the valuation of assessment of oil and gas reserves depends upon pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year. State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount not to

exceed the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised for taxation times the number of years since the property was last appraised, plus (b) the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

Property exempt from taxation includes: (1) property owned and used for public purposes by the State of Texas or its political subdivisions; (2) property exempt by federal law; (3) family supplies, household goods and personal effects not held or used in the production of income; (4) certain property owned by charitable organizations, youth development associations, and religious organizations; (5) certain properties used for school purposes; (6) solar and wind-powered energy devices; (7) farm products, livestock, and poultry in the hands of the producer, and family supplies for home and farm use; (8) implements of husbandry used in the production of farm and ranch products; (9) personally owned automobiles (unless affirmatively provided to be taxed by taxing entity); and (10) property owned by disabled veterans or by the surviving spouse and surviving minor children of disabled veterans is exempt from taxation in amounts ranging from \$5,000 to \$12,000 depending on the disability rating of the veteran.

The Texas Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. A partially disabled veteran or the surviving spouse of a partially disabled veteran, if such spouse has not remarried since the death of the disabled veteran and the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the disabled veteran died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse, is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability, if the residence was donated to the disabled veteran by a charitable organization at no cost to the disabled veteran, or at some cost to the disabled veteran in the form of a cash payment, a mortgage, or both in an aggregate amount that is not more than 50% of the good faith estimate of the market value of the residence homestead made by the charitable organization as of the date the donation is made. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Also, the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Following the approval by the voters at a November 7, 2017 statewide election (and effective as of January 1, 2018), the surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the first responder's death and said property was the first responder's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Constitution exempts from taxation goods, wares, merchandise, other tangible personal property and ores (other than oil, natural gas and other petroleum products) acquired or imported for assembling, storing, manufacturing, processing or fabricating purposes while such property is being detained in the State, and such property is to be forwarded outside the State within 175 days after the date of its acquisition or importation. Notwithstanding such exemption, counties, school districts, junior college districts and cities may tax such tangible personal property provided official action to tax is taken before April 1, 1990. The official action to tax such property can subsequently be rescinded and, if rescinded, such property shall thereafter be exempt from taxation.

Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit" is defined as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official action by January 1 of the first year in which goods-in-transit are proposed to be taxed, and after holding a public hearing, to take official action to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year and to continue to tax those goods until the action authorizing such taxation is rescinded or repealed. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freeport exemptions or the goods-in-transit exemptions for items of personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82nd Texas Legislature, 1st Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action on or after October 1 of the previous year but prior to January 1 of the first tax year in which the governing body proposes to tax good-in-transit to continue its taxation of good-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond.

With respect to school district taxation, \$25,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of an adult is exempt from taxation; and for persons 65 years of age or older and certain disabled persons, an additional exemption is granted not to exceed \$10,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of such persons. Furthermore, the total amount of taxes imposed on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older (and receiving the additional \$10,000 exemption mentioned above) may not be increased while it remains the residence homestead of the person or that person's spouse who received the exemption, unless improvements (other than to comply with government requirements) are made to such homestead, and such freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older for general elementary and secondary public school purposes is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, the surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the taxpayer died in a year he or she qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse is at least 55 years of age when the taxpayer died, and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the taxpayer died and the property remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. A constitutional amendment was approved by the voters on May 12, 2007, and implementation legislation subsequently enacted to apply to the 2007 and subsequent tax years, that reduces the school property tax limitation (commonly referred to as a "freeze" on ad valorem taxes) on residence homesteads of persons 65 years of age or over or of disabled persons to correspond to reductions in local school district tax rates from the 2005 tax year to the 2006 tax year and from the 2006 tax year to the 2007 tax year.

Additionally, a percentage of the value of the residence homestead of a person may be exempt from taxation at the option of the governing body of the taxing entity, such exemption not to exceed 20% each year. Furthermore, not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of a person 65 years of age or older and certain disabled persons may be exempt from taxation, if such exemption is allowed by the governing body of the taxing entity or imposed by referendum election. The governing body of a political subdivision is prohibited from repealing or reducing the amount of an optional homestead exemption that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) for a period ending December 31, 2019.

Levy and Collection of Taxes

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental agency. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures, and (2) a rate for debt service. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d) and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. Furthermore, Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year.

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate.

Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever is the later to occur, and such taxes become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and interest accrues on the delinquent tax amount at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) of the delinquent tax, penalty, and interest collected may be imposed by the District. Split payment of taxes owed, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances are also allowed under existing statutory authority.

Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "state compression percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's state compression percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Overview" for a description of the "state compression percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted a maintenance and operation ("M&O") tax rate that was less than its effective M&O rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code, as amended, provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code, as amended. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d) and, if applicable, Subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills.

A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

The District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property but does have a lien granted by statute for unpaid taxes on real property that is discharged upon payment. Thereafter, no lien exists in favor of the District until it again levies taxes. In the event a taxpayer fails to make timely payment of taxes due to the District on real property, a penalty of 6% of unpaid taxes is incurred in February and 1% is added monthly until the penalty reaches 10%, after which it becomes a flat 12%.

In addition, delinquent taxes incur interest at the rate of 1% per month. The District may file suit for the collection thereof and may foreclose such lien in a foreclosure proceeding. The District may assess up to an additional 20% charge against delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest to defray the legal costs of collecting the delinquent taxes. Under certain circumstances, taxes which become delinquent on the homestead of a taxpayer 65 years old or older incurs a penalty of 8% per annum with no additional penalties or interest assessed. In general, property subject to the District's lien may be sold, in whole or in parcels, pursuant to court order to collect the amounts due.

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of the State of Texas and each taxing unit, including the District, having the power to tax the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of all other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property has priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. Personal property under certain circumstances is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty and interest. At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. The ability of the District to collect delinquent taxes by foreclosure may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, adverse market conditions, taxpayer redemption rights, or bankruptcy proceedings which restrain the collection of a taxpayer's debt. **Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from the bankruptcy court. In many cases post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.**

The Texas Tax Code as Applied to the District

The District grants an exemption to the market value of residence homesteads of \$25,000; the District has not granted an additional exemption of 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District grants an exemption to the market value of the residence homestead to persons 65 years of age or older of \$10,000. Disabled persons are granted an exemption of \$10,000 until age 65, after which time only the over-65 exemption applies.

Disabled veterans are granted an exemption according to their percent (%) of disability.

Ad valorem taxes are not levied by the District against the exempt value of residence homesteads for the payment of debt.

The District does not tax non-business personal property, and the District's Tax Assessor-Collector collects the District's taxes.

The District does not permit split payments and discounts. Installments are allowed under provisions of the Texas Property Tax Code.

The District does not tax freeport property as a result of the District's adoption of a resolution on October 17, 2016 rescinding a 1989 resolution that previously taxed such property.

STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time, (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had become both a floor and a ceiling, denying school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Texas Supreme Court decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws which made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded, in efforts to address decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Texas Supreme Court issued its opinion in the most recent litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer and Student Fairness Coalition, et al.*, No. 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Texas Supreme Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Texas Supreme Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

Possible Effects of Litigation and Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect." While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation or litigation, or how such legislation or future court orders may affect the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the disposition of any possible future litigation or the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could substantially adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, as noted herein, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such litigation or legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM."

CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the “Foundation School Program”, as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district's property wealth per student increases, State funding to the school district is reduced. As a school district's property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district's State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited M&O tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund (“I&S”) tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy a tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS” herein). As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

Local Funding for School Districts

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the “Reform Legislation”), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to “compress” its tax rate by an amount equal to the “State Compression Percentage”. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate” herein). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (See “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS” herein).

State Funding for School Districts

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a “Basic Allotment”) for each student in average daily attendance (“ADA”). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district's compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district's basic level of funding, referred to as “Tier One” of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then “enriched” with additional funds known as “Tier Two” of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment (“EDA”) to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment (“IFA”) to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment (“NIFA”) to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th

Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the "Basic Allotment". For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the "cost of education index", (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district's student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment, create what is referred to as the "Adjusted Allotment". The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a "regular program allotment", as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district's local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance ("WADA") in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see "Wealth Transfer Provisions" below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a "fractionally funded district") received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district's compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district's current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district's compressed tax rate until the district's compressed tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Guaranteed Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater

amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2017-2018 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

2006 Legislation

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR are repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

2017 Legislation

The 85th Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85th Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.

2019 Legislative Session

On January 8, 2019, the 86th Texas Legislature convened in general session and is scheduled to adjourn on May 27, 2019. Thereafter, the Texas Governor may call one or more additional special sessions. During this time, the Texas Legislature may enact laws that materially change current law as it relates to Texas school finance. The District makes no representation regarding any actions the Texas Legislature may take, but intends to monitor proposed legislation for any developments applicable to the District.

Wealth Transfer Provisions

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise, Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain options in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with

respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value. Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

The District's wealth per student for the 2018-19 school year is more than the equalized value. As a result, the District is subject to certain wealth equalization provisions under current law. However, because the District's identified wealth level falls between \$319,500 and \$514,000 wealth per student and the District's M&O tax rate of \$1.04 does not exceed the compressed rate plus six cents, the District is not subject to recapture of funds from local tax collections in fiscal year 2018-2019. As a so-called "Chapter 41 district", the District does not receive EDA, IFA, or NFA to pay debt service requirements on its outstanding indebtedness, including the Bonds.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year, and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters under Section 45.003(d) of the Texas Education Code, as amended. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the succeeding paragraphs. The maximum voted M&O Tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on July 20, 1968 pursuant to the provisions of Texas Revised Civil Statutes Annotated, Article 2784e-1, as amended ("Article 2784e-1").

Article 2784e-1 limits the District's annual M&O tax rate based upon a comparison between the District's outstanding bonded indebtedness and the District's taxable assessed value per \$100 of assessed valuation. Article 2784e-1 provides for a reduction of \$0.10 for each one percent (1%) or major fraction thereof increase in bonded indebtedness beyond seven percent (7%) of assessed valuation of property in the District. This limitation is capped when the District's bonded indebtedness is ten percent (10%) (or greater) of the District's assessed valuation which would result in an annual M&O tax rate not to exceed \$1.20. Lastly, the Texas Attorney General in reviewing the District's transcript of proceedings will allow the District to reduce the amount of its outstanding bonded indebtedness by the amount of funds (on a percentage basis) that the District receives in State assistance for the repayment of this bonded indebtedness (for example, if the District anticipates that it will pay 75% of its bonded indebtedness from State assistance, for the purposes of Article

* Preliminary, subject to change.

2784e-1, the Texas Attorney General will assume that only 25% of the bonded indebtedness is outstanding and payable from local ad valorem taxes). The bonded indebtedness of the District after the issuance of the Bonds will be approximately 9.74%* of the District's current taxable assessed valuation of property. See "APPENDIX A - VALUATION AND DEBT DATA - Valuation Information, Direct Debt Information, and Direct Debt Ratios" herein.

The maximum tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50 and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the "State Compression Percentage" multiplied by \$1.50. The State Compression Percentage has been set, and will remain, at 66.67% for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For a more detailed description of the State Compression Percentage, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Local Funding for School Districts." Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the district's "rollback tax rate" without submitting such tax rate to a referendum election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES - Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate."

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS - Security for Payment").

Section 45.0031, Texas Education Code, as amended ("Section 45.0031"), requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the district, which effectively reduce the district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the district. The District is required to deposit any State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service into the District's interest and sinking fund upon receipt of such amounts. In addition, the District must, prior to levying an interest and sinking fund tax rate that exceeds \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, credit to the interest and sinking fund other State assistance, including Tier One funds that may be used for either operating purposes or for payment of debt service, in an amount equal to the amount needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test when applied to subsequent bond issues. The Bonds are issued for school building purposes pursuant to Chapter 45, Texas Education Code, as amended, as new debt and are subject to the threshold tax rate test. Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. The District has not used State assistance or projected property values to satisfy this threshold test.

DEBT LIMITATIONS

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay "new debt" from a tax rate of \$0.50. In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments and, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving state assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund for the bonds the amount of State assistance received or to be received in that year. The State Attorney General reviews a district's calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt. As stated above, the Bonds are new debt and are subject to this limitation.

EMPLOYEE BENEFITS, RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan with the State of Texas (the "Plan"). The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). The TRS is a cost-sharing, multiple-employer defined benefit pension plan. See "Note H - Pension Plan" in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2018 as set forth in APPENDIX C hereto.

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRSCare), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. See "Note I - Defined Other Post-Employment Benefit Plans" in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2018 as set forth in APPENDIX C hereto.

In June 2012, the Government Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") issued *Statement No. 68 Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions*, which was later amended by *Statement No. 71 Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date*, to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments related to pensions. GASB Statement No. 68 requires reporting entities, such as the District, to recognize their proportionate share of the net pension liability and operating statement activity related to changes in collective pension liability. Reporting entities, such as the District, that contribute to the TRS pension plan will report a liability on the face of their government-wide financial statements. Such reporting began with the District's fiscal year ending August 31, 2015. See "FIVE-YEAR RECORD OF FINANCIAL OPERATIONS" in Appendix A herein. GASB Statement No. 68 applies only to pension benefits and does not apply to OPB or TRS-Care related liabilities. At the conclusion of the 2017-18 fiscal year, the District had a net pension liability of \$5,276,497.

Other than the District's contribution to the TRS, it does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45.

See "Note N – Prior Period Adjustment" in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2018 as set forth in APPENDIX C hereto for information related to the District's adoption of Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions* and the related prior period adjustment.

INVESTMENT POLICIES

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board. Both Texas law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

Legal Investments

Under Texas law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including letters of credit; (2) direct obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State of Texas or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "A" or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed, or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, or otherwise meeting the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act; (8) certificates of deposit and share certificates that (i) are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch in Texas and (a) are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, (b) are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (7) above, or (c) secured in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits, or (ii) certificates of deposit where (a) the funds are invested by the District through a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law, or a depository institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas that is selected by the District; (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District, (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, an entity as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit issued for the account of the District; (9) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are fully secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1), (iii) require the securities being purchased by the District or cash held by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and (iv) are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (10) securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time, and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (7) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than "A" or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (7) above and clauses (12) through (15) below, (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or a third party designated by the District, (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary

government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State of Texas, and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less; (11) certain bankers' acceptances if the bankers' acceptance (i) has a stated maturity of 270 days or fewer from the date of issuance, (ii) will be, in accordance with its terms, liquidated in full at maturity, (iii) is eligible for collateral for borrowing from a Federal Reserve Bank, and (iv) is accepted by a State or Federal bank, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its holding company (if the accepting bank is the largest subsidiary) are rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with (i) a stated maturity of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, and (ii) a rating of at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds that are (i) registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, (ii) provide the District with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934; and (iii) comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7; (14) no-load mutual funds that are (i) registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, (ii) have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and (iii) either (a) have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph, or (b) have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities; (15) investment pools if the District has authorized investment in the particular pool and the pool invests solely in investments permitted by the Texas Public Funds Investment Act, and is continuously rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAA-m" or at an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and (16) guaranteed investment contracts that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are secured by obligations which meet the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract, and (iii) are pledged to the District and deposited with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District.

The District may also contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance, or resolution. The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

As a school district that qualifies as an "issuer" under Chapter 1371, the District is also authorized to purchase, sell, and invest its funds in corporate bonds. State law defines "corporate bonds" as senior secured debt obligations issued by a domestic business entity and rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent by a nationally recognized investment rating firm. The term does not include a bond that is convertible into stocks or shares in the entity issuing the bond (or an affiliate or subsidiary thereof) or any unsecured debt. Corporate bonds must finally mature not later than 3 years from their date of purchase by the school district. A school district may not (1) invest more than 15% of its monthly average fund balance (excluding bond proceeds, reserves, and other funds held for the payment of debt service) in corporate bonds; or (2) invest more than 25% of the funds invested in corporate bonds in any one domestic business entity (including subsidiaries and affiliates thereof). Corporate bonds held by a school district must be sold if they are at any time downgraded below "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof) or, with respect to a corporate bond rated "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof), such corporate bond is placed on negative credit watch. Corporate bonds are not an eligible investment for a public funds investment pool. To invest in corporate bonds, an eligible school district must first (i) amend its investment policy to authorize corporate bonds as an eligible investment, (ii) adopt procedures for monitoring rating changes in corporate bonds and liquidating an investment in corporate bonds, and (iii) identify funds eligible to be invested in corporate bonds. As of the date of this Official Statement, the District has not taken the steps necessary to allow for investing in corporate bonds or made investments in that type of instrument.

Investment Policies

Under Texas law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under Texas law, District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of

each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board of Trustees.

Additional Provisions

Under Texas law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt an order or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the said order or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board of Trustees; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolios require an interpretation of subjective investment standards, or relates to investment transactions of the entity that are not made through accounts or other contractual arrangements over which the business organization has accepted discretionary investment authority), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in on-money market mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the entity's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

Current Investments*

As of December 15, 2018, the following percentages of the District's investable funds were invested as indicated below:

<u>Category of Investments</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Percentage</u>	<u>Term of Investments</u>
Bank Accounts	\$ 4,622,713	44.82%	Daily liquidity
Investment Pools	<u>5,692,229</u>	<u>55.18%</u>	Daily liquidity
	\$10,314,942	100.00%	

* Unaudited.

As of such date, the market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) was approximately 100% of their book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities, *i.e.*, securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

LEGAL MATTERS

Legal Opinions and No-Litigation Certificate

The District will furnish the Underwriters a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approval of certain legal matters by Bond Counsel, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District and, subject to the qualifications set forth herein under "TAX MATTERS," the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, published rulings, regulations, and court decisions. Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of the Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained therein, except that, in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information under the captions "THE BONDS" (exclusive of the subcaptions "Payment Record," "Permanent School Fund Guarantee," and "Default and Remedies," as to which no opinion is expressed), "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS," "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM," "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" (first paragraph only), "LEGAL MATTERS" (excluding the last two sentences of this paragraph and the information under the subcaption "Litigation," as to which no opinion is expressed), "TAX MATTERS," "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE" (excluding the information under the subcaption "Compliance with Prior Agreements," as to which no opinion is expressed), "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Registration and Qualification of Bonds for

Sale” in the Official Statement and such firm is of the opinion that the information relating to the Bonds and the legal issues contained under such captions and subcaptions is an accurate description of the laws and legal issues addressed therein and, with respect to the Bonds, such information conforms to the Order. The legal fee to be paid Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent on the sale and delivery of the Bonds. Bond Counsel's legal opinion will accompany the Bonds deposited with DTC or will be printed on the Bonds in the event of the discontinuance of the Book-Entry Only System. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their counsel, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas, whose compensation is contingent on the sale and delivery of the Bonds. McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. also advises the TEA in connection with its disclosure obligations under the federal securities laws, but such firm has not passed upon any TEA disclosures contained in this Official Statement.

Though it represents the Financial Advisor and the Underwriters from time to time in matters unrelated to the Bonds, Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. The legal opinion to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds expresses the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinion as to the legal issues expressly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise from the transaction.

Litigation

In the opinion of various officials of the District, except as disclosed in this Official Statement, there is no litigation or other proceeding pending against or, to their knowledge, threatened against the District in any court, agency, or administrative body (either state or federal) wherein an adverse decision would materially adversely affect the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Underwriters with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Bonds.

TAX MATTERS

Opinion

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel, to the effect that interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (1) is excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the “Code”), of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. The statute, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion appears in APPENDIX D hereto.

In rendering the foregoing opinion, Bond Counsel will rely upon the representations and certifications of the District made in a certificate of even date with the initial delivery of the Bonds pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and will assume continuing compliance with the provisions of the Order by the District subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds. The Order contains covenants by the District with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the facilities and equipment financed or refinanced therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Bonds are to be invested, if required, the calculation and payment to the United States Treasury of any arbitrage “profits” and the reporting of certain information to the United States Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Bonds.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel will express no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the Issuer described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the “IRS”) with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on municipal obligations. If an audit of the Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the District as the “taxpayer,” and the owners of the Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Bonds, the Issuer may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Bonds. Public awareness of any future audit of the Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

Tax Changes

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to bondholders of the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

Ancillary Tax Consequences

Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust ("FASIT"), individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain bonds may be less than the amount payable on such bonds at maturity (the "Discount Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Bonds. A portion of such original issue discount, allocable to the holding period of a Discount Bond by the initial purchaser, will be treated as interest for federal income tax purposes, excludable from gross income on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Bonds. Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Bond, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Bond and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during his taxable year.

However, such accrued interest may be taken into account in determining the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a FASIT, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

In the event of the sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Bond prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Bond was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal income tax purposes of accrued interest upon disposition of Discount Bonds and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning Discount Bonds. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on the Discount Bonds may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain bonds may be greater than the stated redemption price on such bonds at maturity (the "Premium Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and its stated redemption price at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Bonds. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Bond in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium with respect to the Premium Bonds. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Bond. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS

Under the Texas Public Security Procedures Act (Texas Government Code, Chapter 1201, as amended), the Bonds (i) are negotiable instruments, (ii) are investment securities to which Chapter 8 of the Texas Uniform Commercial Code applies, and (iii) are legal and authorized investments for (A) an insurance company, (B) a fiduciary or trustee, or (C) a sinking fund of a municipality or other political subdivision or public agency of the State of Texas. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies and political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value. For political subdivisions in Texas which have adopted investment policies and guidelines in accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act (Texas Government Code, Chapter 2256, as amended), the Bonds may have to be assigned a rating of at least "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency before such obligations are eligible investments for sinking funds and other public funds. See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Rating" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital and savings and loan associations.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE

The District in the Order has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). This information will be available to the public free of charge from the MSRB via the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system at www.emma.msrb.org, as further described below under "Availability of Information from MSRB".

Annual Reports

The District will file certain updated financial information and operating data with the MSRB annually. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in APPENDIX A, attached hereto, exclusive of the tables reflecting "Direct and Estimated Gross Overlapping Funded Debt Payable from Ad Valorem Taxes," "Estimated Interest & Sinking Fund Management Index 2017/18" and "2018/2019 Pro Forma Interest & Sinking Fund Management Index," respectively, and in APPENDIX C attached hereto. Additionally, the tables which provide neither quantitative financial information nor operating data for the District, including, but not limited to the "Authorized But Unissued General Obligation Bonds" and "Anticipated Issuance of Additional Bonds," have not been and will not be included in the District's annual filings. The District will update and provide this information to the MSRB within 6 months after the end of each fiscal year ending in or after 2019.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule"). The updated information will include audited financial statements, if the District commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not available by the required time, the District will provide unaudited financial statements by the required time and audited financial statements when and if such audited financial statements become available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in APPENDIX C or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to state law or regulation.

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless it changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will file notice of such change with the MSRB.

Notice of Certain Events

The District will file with the MSRB notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds in a timely manner (not more than 10 business days after occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in

the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or the change of name of a Paying Agent/Registrar, if material. Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for debt service reserves, credit enhancement (with the exception of the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports." The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District.

Availability of Information from MSRB

Effective July 1, 2009 (the "EMMA Effective Date"), the SEC implemented amendments to the Rule which approved the establishment by the MSRB of EMMA, which is now the sole successor to the national municipal securities information repositories with respect to filings made in connection with undertakings made under the Rule after the EMMA Effective Date. Commencing with the EMMA Effective Date, all information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB.

With respect to debt of the District issued prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the District remains obligated to make annual required filings, as well as notices of material events, under its continuing disclosure obligations relating to those debt obligations (which includes a continuing obligation to make such filings with the Texas state information depository (the "SID")). Prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas (the "MAC") had been designated by the State and approved by the SEC staff as a qualified SID. Subsequent to the EMMA Effective Date, the MAC has entered into a Subscription Agreement with the MSRB pursuant to which the MSRB makes available to the MAC, in electronic format, all Texas-issuer continuing disclosure documents and related information posted to EMMA's website simultaneously with such posting. Until the District receives notice of a change in this contractual agreement between the MAC and EMMA or of a failure of either party to perform as specified thereunder, the District has determined, in reliance on guidance from the MAC, that making its continuing disclosure filings solely with the MSRB will satisfy its obligations to make filings with the SID pursuant to its continuing disclosure agreements entered into prior to the EMMA Effective Date.

Limitations and Amendments

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of specified events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders or beneficial owners of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if (1) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also repeal or amend these provisions if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the Rule or any court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but in either case only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds giving effect to (a) such provisions as so amended and (b) any amendments or interpretations of the Rule. If the District amends its agreement, it must include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and data provided.

Compliance with Prior Agreements

During the last five (5) years, the District has complied in all material respects with all previous continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION

Authenticity of Financial Information

The financial data and other information contained herein have been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources, which are believed to be reliable. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and orders contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents and orders. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such documents for further information. Reference is made to original documents in all respects.

Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities act of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Underwriters to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District agrees to cooperate, at the Underwriters' written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

Municipal Bond Rating

The District has made application to Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") for a contract rating on the Bonds based on the guarantee thereof by the Texas Permanent School Fund. Moody's generally rates all bonds guaranteed by the Texas Permanent School Fund "Aaa." The results will be made available as soon as possible. The current unenhanced rating of the District's outstanding indebtedness is "A2" by Moody's. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.

An explanation of the significance of any rating may be obtained from the company furnishing the rating. The rating reflects only the view of such organization and the District makes no representation as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that such rating will continue for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of such company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

Financial Advisor

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Financial Advisor") is employed as the Financial Advisor to the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. The Financial Advisor's fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Bonds. SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., in its capacity as Financial Advisor, has relied on the opinions of Bond Counsel and has not verified and does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants, and representations contained in any of the bond documentation with respect to the federal income tax status of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may also from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

Underwriting

The Underwriters have agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase the Bonds from the District at the price equal to the initial offering prices to the public, as shown on page -ii- herein, less an Underwriters' discount of \$_____, plus accrued interest from their Dated Date to their date of initial delivery. The Underwriters' obligation is subject to certain conditions precedent. The Underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the Bonds, if any of the Bonds are purchased. The Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers and others at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriters.

The Underwriters have provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriters have reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

RBC Capital Markets, LLC ("RBCCM") has provided the following information for inclusion in this Official Statement. RBCCM is a full-service financial institution engaged in various activities, that may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, municipal advisory, brokerage, and asset management. In the ordinary course of business, RBCCM may actively trade debt and, if applicable, equity securities (or related derivative securities) and provide financial instruments (which may include bank loans, credit support or interest rate swaps). RBCCM may engage in transactions for its own accounts involving the securities and instruments made the subject of this securities offering or other offerings of the District. RBCCM may also communicate independent investment recommendations, market color or trading ideas and publish independent research views in respect of this securities offering or other offerings of the District. RBCCM may make a market in credit default swaps with respect to municipal securities in the future.

Forward-Looking Statements

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

Information from External Sources

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

Authorization of the Official Statement

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District.

This Official Statement has been approved by the Board of the District for distribution in accordance with provisions of the SEC's Rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c2-12, as amended.

The Order approved the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Underwriters.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

/s/

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

/s/

Secretary, Board of Trustees

APPENDIX A

**Selected Financial Information
of the District**

(this page intentionally left blank)

VALUATION AND DEBT DATA

Valuation Information

2018 Appraised Valuation of District	\$3,244,649,982
Less: Exemptions/Deductions *	<u>783,625,411</u>
2018 Total Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$2,461,024,571

Source: *Williamson Central Appraisal District as of certification. These values do not include additional taxable values of \$45,399,486 which are currently under review by the Appraisal Review Board.*

* *Does not include valuations in the amount of \$347,064,757 against which freeze of tax levy was granted for disabled persons and persons 65 years or older in 2018.*

Direct Debt Information

Total Indebtedness Payable from Ad Valorem Taxes: (at 12-01-2018)	
Limited Tax	\$ 1,384,414 ⁽¹⁾
Unlimited Tax	<u>238,244,649</u> ⁽²⁾
Total All Bonded Indebtedness Payable from Taxes	239,629,063 ⁽²⁾
Less Interest & Sinking Fund Consolidated Cash Balance (unaudited at 12-01-2018)	<u>4,075,807</u>
NET BONDED INDEBTEDNESS PAYABLE FROM AD VALOREM TAXES	\$235,553,256 ⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ *Payable from District's maintenance and operations taxing authority.*

⁽²⁾ *Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds.*

Direct Debt Ratios

Ratio of Total Bonded Debt (\$239,629,063*) to 2018 Taxable Assessed Valuation (\$2,461,024,571)	9.74%
Ratio of Total Bonded Debt (\$239,629,063*) to 2018 Total Appraised Valuation (\$3,244,649,982)	7.38%
Ratio of Net Bonded Debt (\$235,553,256*) to 2018 Taxable Assessed Valuation (\$2,461,024,571)	9.57%
Ratio of Net Bonded Debt (\$235,553,256*) to 2018 Total Appraised Valuation (\$3,244,649,982)	7.26%

* *Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds.*

Non-Funded Debt

Commitments under capitalized lease agreements for facilities and equipment provide for minimum future lease payments as of August 31, 2018, as follows:

<u>Year Ending August 31:</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
2019	\$ 338,231	\$30,566	\$368,797
2020	150,480	15,960	166,440
2021	155,622	9,742	165,364
2022	85,304	4,424	89,728
2023	<u>42,767</u>	<u>1,470</u>	<u>44,237</u>
Total Minimum Rentals	<u>\$772,404</u>	<u>\$62,162</u>	<u>\$834,566</u>

Source: *District's 2018 Annual Financial Report.*

Authorized But Unissued General Obligation Bonds

The District expects, after the issuance of the Bonds, to have no voter authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax-supported bonds. The District may, however, incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

Anticipated Issuance of Additional Bonds

The District does not anticipate the issuance of additional tax-supported debt in the next twelve months, except for potentially issuing refunding obligations for debt service savings.

Population and Per Capita Indebtedness

2018 District Population Estimate	18,073
2018 Per Capita Taxable Assessed Valuation (\$2,461,024,571).....	\$136,171.34
Per Capita Direct Debt (\$239,629,063*)	\$13,258.95*

* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds.

Enrollment and Average Daily Attendance Data

2018/2019 Enrollment (at 12/1/2018)	4,416
2018/2019 Average Daily Attendance (12/1/2018)	4,171.63
2018 Taxable Assessed Valuation (\$2,461,024,571) Per Enrollment	\$557,297.23

Valuation and Bonded Debt Data

Area of District in Square Miles	109.74
Area of District in Acres	70,234
Total Direct Bonded Debt (\$239,629,063*) Per Acre	\$3,411.87*
2018 Taxable Assessed Valuation (\$2,461,024,571) Per Acre	\$35,040.36
2018 Total Appraised Valuation (\$3,244,649,982) Per Acre	\$46,197.71

* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds.

Outstanding Debt by Issues

	<u>Original Amount</u>	<u>Amount Outstanding at 12-01-2018</u> ⁽¹⁾
Limited Tax:		
Maintenance Tax Notes, Series 2010	\$ 1,163,064	\$ 579,414
Maintenance Tax Time Warrants, Series 2015	1,000,000	805,000
Unlimited Tax:		
School Building and Refunding Bonds, Series 2011	87,564,926	36,016,947
Variable Rate Refunding Bonds, Series 2013	9,595,000	6,760,000
Refunding Bonds, Series 2014	15,717,702	15,717,702
School Building Bonds, Series 2016	33,840,000	33,815,000
Refunding Bonds, Series 2017	47,335,000	47,335,000
School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds")	98,600,000 ⁽²⁾	<u>98,600,000</u> ⁽²⁾
Total Debt		\$239,629,063 ⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ Unaudited.

⁽²⁾ Preliminary, subject to change.

**Consolidated Schedule of Bonded Issue Principal Requirements
(Year Ending August 31 In Each Of The Years 2019 - 2049 Inclusive)***

2019	\$ 2,480,001	
2020	1,517,006	
2021	1,569,940	
2022	3,710,000	
2023	3,900,000	5.53%
	-	
2024	4,140,000	
2025	4,470,000	
2026	4,930,000	
2027	5,310,000	
2028	5,670,000	15.82%
	-	
2029	6,015,000	
2030	6,380,000	
2031	6,750,000	
2032	7,110,000	
2033	7,485,000	29.98%
	-	
2034	7,845,000	
2035	5,182,702	
2036	8,375,000	
2037	8,740,000	
2038	9,170,000	46.49%
	-	
2039	9,620,000	
2040	10,080,000	
2041	10,425,000	
2042	10,460,000	
2043	10,905,000	68.10%
	-	
2044	11,400,000	
2045	11,895,000	
2046	12,250,000	
2047	12,850,000	
2048	13,475,000	94.07%
	-	
2049	<u>14,135,000</u>	100.00%
	\$238,244,649	

* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds. Does not include the maintenance and operations tax debt.

(The remainder of this page has been left blank intentionally.)

Direct and Estimated Gross Overlapping Funded Debt Payable from Ad Valorem Taxes

Expenditures of the various taxing bodies overlapping the territory of the District are paid out of ad valorem taxes levied by these taxing bodies on properties overlapping the District. These political taxing bodies are independent of the District and may incur borrowings to finance their expenditures. The following statements of direct and estimated overlapping ad valorem tax bonds was developed from information contained in the "Texas Municipal Reports" published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. Except for the amounts relating to the District, the District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information, and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete. Furthermore, certain of the entities listed below may have authorized or issued additional bonds since the date stated below, and such entities may have programs requiring the authorization and/or issuance of substantial amounts of additional bonds, the amount of which cannot be determined. The following table reflects the estimated share of direct and overlapping extended debt of these various taxing bodies:

Political Subdivision	Gross Debt		Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
	Amount	As Of		
Austin Community College District	\$418,335,000	12-1-2018	(1)	\$ -0-
Liberty Hill, City of	9,641,000	12-1-2018	100.00%	9,641,000
Stonewall Ranch MUD	6,730,000	12-1-2018	100.00%	6,730,000
Williamson County	878,234,942	12-1-2018	2.99%	26,259,225
West Williamson County MUD #1	5,750,000	12-1-2018	96.12%	5,526,900
Williamson County MUD #12	38,295,000	12-1-2018	100.00%	38,295,000
Williamson County MUD #19	9,865,000	12-1-2018	100.00%	9,865,000
Williamson County MUD #23	3,915,000	12-1-2018	100.00%	<u>3,915,000</u>
Total Overlapping Funded Debt				\$100,232,125
Liberty Hill I.S.D.	239,629,063	12-1-2018	100.00%	<u>239,629,063</u> *
Total Direct and Estimated Overlapping Funded Debt				\$339,861,188
Ratio to 2018 Taxable Assessed Valuation (\$2,461,024,571)				<u>13.81%</u>
Per Capita (18,073) Direct and Estimated Overlapping Debt				\$18,804.91

* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds and the maintenance tax debt.

(1) Less than 0.01%.

TAXATION DATA

Historical Valuations, Tax Rates, and Collection Data

Tax Year	Assessed Valuation⁽¹⁾	Tax Rate	% Collections		Year Ending
			Current	Total	
2007	\$ 832,280,252	\$1.250	97.41%	99.83%	8-31-08
2008	966,712,884	1.250	96.05%	98.81%	8-31-09
2009	1,024,302,844	1.250	98.38%	100.24%	8-31-10
2010	1,017,614,474	1.260	98.50%	100.43%	8-31-11
2011	1,029,663,371	1.335	97.99%	99.60%	8-31-12
2012	1,033,273,034	1.450	98.73%	100.12%	8-31-13
2013	1,081,715,260	1.540	97.62%	98.89%	8-31-14
2014	1,224,736,883	1.540	98.62%	100.64%	8-31-15
2015	1,403,788,766	1.540	99.00%	99.97%	8-31-16
2016	1,692,610,554	1.540	99.28%	99.86%	8-31-17
2017	1,966,046,733	1.540	98.75%	99.40%	8-31-18
2018	2,461,024,571	1.540	(In Process of Collection)		8-31-19

(1) 2007 through 2017 taken from the District's 2018 Annual Financial Report; 2018 taken from Williamson Central Appraisal District information.

Tax Rate Distribution

<u>Tax Year</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
Local Maintenance	\$1.040	\$1.040	\$1.040	\$1.040	\$1.040
Interest & Sinking Fund	<u>0.500</u>	<u>0.500</u>	<u>0.500</u>	<u>0.500</u>	<u>0.500</u>
Total	\$1.540	\$1.540	\$1.540	\$1.540	\$1.540

Source: *The District*

2018 Tax Exemptions/Deductions Allowed

Homestead - State-mandated General \$25,000	\$117,196,654
Homestead - State-mandated Over-65 or Disabled \$10,000	15,769,143
100% Disabled Veterans	31,302,284
Disabled Persons	1,203,607
10% Appraisal Cap Loss	23,430,976
Productivity Loss	552,568,215
Pollution Control	185,699
Solar	133,956
Freeport	1,872,162
Other	<u>39,962,715</u>
Total Exemptions and Exclusions	\$783,625,411

Source: *Williamson Central Appraisal District.*

Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable (Unaudited) Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

<u>Last Ten Years Ended August 31</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>
2009 and prior years	\$ 14,776
2010	2,885
2011	4,743
2012	5,289
2013	7,355
2014	8,213
2015	12,518
2016	13,706
2017	31,953
2018	<u>391,866</u>
Total	\$493,304

Source: *District's 2018 Annual Financial Report.*

Taxpayers by Classification

Classification	2018	Percent of Total	2017	Percent of Total	2016	Percent of Total
	Assessed Valuation		Assessed Valuation		Assessed Valuation	
Single Family Residential	\$1,901,794,305	58.61%	\$1,507,956,468	56.32%	\$1,290,995,543	54.37%
Multi-family Residential	21,535,861	0.66%	20,136,582	0.75%	7,719,028	0.32%
Vacant Lots and Land Tracts	79,825,342	2.46%	76,075,901	2.84%	71,264,025	3.00%
Real Acreage (land only)	554,998,463	17.11%	590,182,319	22.04%	589,125,391	24.81%
Real Farm & Ranch Improvements	236,200,694	7.27%	136,306,086	5.09%	132,176,880	5.57%
Commercial & Industrial Real	165,382,331	5.10%	143,852,722	5.37%	124,017,245	5.22%
Oil, Gas, Minerals	443,298	0.01%	254,080	0.01%	163,172	0.01%
Utilities	24,902,931	0.77%	17,233,810	0.64%	10,132,966	0.43%
Tangible Personal Business	69,716,825	2.15%	51,087,858	1.91%	43,069,029	1.81%
Tangible / Mobile Homes	5,041,011	0.16%	5,130,041	0.19%	4,327,790	0.18%
Residential Inventory	183,639,975	5.66%	127,850,310	4.78%	100,845,861	4.25%
Special Inventory	<u>1,168,946</u>	<u>0.04%</u>	<u>1,441,033</u>	<u>0.06%</u>	<u>783,751</u>	<u>0.03%</u>
	\$3,244,649,982					
Total Valuation	\$3,244,649,982	100.0%	\$2,677,507,210	100.00%	\$2,374,620,681	100.00%
Less Exemptions & Exclusions ⁽¹⁾	<u>783,625,411</u>		<u>695,085,610</u>		<u>682,010,127</u>	
Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	<u>\$2,461,024,571</u>		<u>\$1,982,421,600</u>		<u>\$1,692,610,554</u>	

Source: Williamson Central Appraisal District as of certification for each respective year. The respective years do not include the valuations that were under review by the Appraisal Review Board at the certification date.

⁽¹⁾ Freeport property taxed prior to 2016. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES - The Texas Tax Code as Applied to the District."

Ten Largest Taxpayers

Name	Type of Property	2018 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	Percent of Total 2018 Assessed Valuation
Enterprise Crude Pipeline LLC	Pipeline	\$26,294,490	1.07%
Oaks at San Gabriel LLC	Residential Development	11,107,245	0.45%
Pedernales Electric Cooperative	Utility	10,597,949	0.43%
RSI Stonewall LLC	Residential Development	9,463,767	0.38%
Nash Rancho Hills LLC	Land/Improvements	9,311,166	0.38%
Cimmaron Hills Development LLC	Residential Development	8,273,007	0.34%
APAC Texas Inc	Paving Contractor	7,589,968	0.31%
Meridell Achievement Center	Specialized Residential Treatment Center	7,558,446	0.31%
MREC MAG Morningstar LLC	Residential Development	7,258,685	0.29%
HWY 29 Ventures 2015 LP	Residential Development	<u>7,052,267</u>	<u>0.29%</u>
Total.....		\$104,506,990	4.25%

Source: Williamson Central Appraisal District.

ESTIMATED INTEREST & SINKING FUND MANAGEMENT INDEX 2018/19

Estimated Interest & Sinking Fund Balance at 8-31-2018.....	\$ 4,075,807
Estimated Income from \$0.50 I&S Tax Rate @ 95% Collected Using 2018 Taxable Assessed Valuation of \$2,461,024,571	11,689,867
Estimated Other Income	<u>1,150,000</u>
Estimated Total Funds Available	16,915,674
2018/19 Debt Service Requirement	<u>12,712,126</u>
Estimated Interest & Sinking Fund Balance at 8-31-2019	\$ 4,203,548

CONSOLIDATED DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS INCLUDING THE BONDS AT ASSUMED RATES

FISCAL YEAR 8-31	CURRENTLY OUTSTANDING DEBT SERVICE ⁽²⁾	PLUS: THE BONDS AT ASSUMED RATES ⁽¹⁾				GRAND TOTAL ALL ALL DEBT SERVICE
		PRINCIPAL DUE 2/1	INTEREST DUE 2/1	INTEREST DUE 8/1	TOTAL	
2019	\$ 10,370,376.00			\$ 2,341,750.00	\$ 2,341,750.00	\$ 12,712,126.00
2020	9,607,500.00	\$ 50,000	\$ 2,341,750.00	2,340,562.50	4,732,312.50	14,339,812.50
2021	9,619,750.00	75,000	2,340,562.50	2,338,781.25	4,754,343.75	14,374,093.75
2022	9,524,800.00	250,000	2,338,781.25	2,332,843.75	4,921,625.00	14,446,425.00
2023	9,543,250.00	250,000	2,332,843.75	2,326,906.25	4,909,750.00	14,453,000.00
2024	9,563,800.00	325,000	2,326,906.25	2,319,187.50	4,971,093.75	14,534,893.75
2025	9,593,150.00	450,000	2,319,187.50	2,308,500.00	5,077,687.50	14,670,837.50
2026	9,747,700.00	545,000	2,308,500.00	2,295,556.25	5,149,056.25	14,896,756.25
2027	9,769,325.00	685,000	2,295,556.25	2,279,287.50	5,259,843.75	15,029,168.75
2028	9,783,700.00	800,000	2,279,287.50	2,260,287.50	5,339,575.00	15,123,275.00
2029	9,811,075.00	875,000	2,260,287.50	2,239,506.25	5,374,793.75	15,185,868.75
2030	9,820,450.00	975,000	2,239,506.25	2,216,350.00	5,430,856.25	15,251,306.25
2031	9,846,200.00	1,050,000	2,216,350.00	2,191,412.50	5,457,762.50	15,303,962.50
2032	9,859,050.00	1,150,000	2,191,412.50	2,164,100.00	5,505,512.50	15,364,562.50
2033	9,876,625.00	1,250,000	2,164,100.00	2,134,412.50	5,548,512.50	15,425,137.50
2034	9,866,825.00	1,350,000	2,134,412.50	2,102,350.00	5,586,762.50	15,453,587.50
2035	11,156,600.00	100,000	2,102,350.00	2,099,975.00	4,302,325.00	15,458,925.00
2036	10,495,900.00	800,000	2,099,975.00	2,080,975.00	4,980,950.00	15,476,850.00
2037	10,458,800.00	880,000	2,080,975.00	2,060,075.00	5,021,050.00	15,479,850.00
2038	10,463,400.00	920,000	2,060,075.00	2,038,225.00	5,018,300.00	15,481,700.00
2039	10,468,700.00	960,000	2,038,225.00	2,015,425.00	5,013,650.00	15,482,350.00
2040	10,463,950.00	1,000,000	2,015,425.00	1,991,675.00	5,007,100.00	15,471,050.00
2041	6,175,900.00	5,100,000	1,991,675.00	1,870,550.00	8,962,225.00	15,138,125.00
2042	4,576,200.00	6,550,000	1,870,550.00	1,714,987.50	10,135,537.50	14,711,737.50
2043	5,394,900.00	6,000,000	1,714,987.50	1,572,487.50	9,287,475.00	14,682,375.00
2044	5,193,800.00	6,500,000	1,572,487.50	1,418,112.50	9,490,600.00	14,684,400.00
2045	4,992,900.00	7,000,000	1,418,112.50	1,251,862.50	9,669,975.00	14,662,875.00
2046		12,250,000	1,251,862.50	960,925.00	14,462,787.50	14,462,787.50
2047		12,850,000	960,925.00	655,737.50	14,466,662.50	14,466,662.50
2048		13,475,000	655,737.50	335,706.25	14,466,443.75	14,466,443.75
2049		14,135,000	335,706.25	-	14,470,706.25	14,470,706.25
<u>\$246,044,626.00</u>		<u>\$98,600,000</u>	<u>\$58,258,512.50</u>	<u>\$58,258,512.50</u>	<u>\$215,117,025.00</u>	<u>\$461,161,651.00</u>

⁽¹⁾ Preliminary, subject to change.

⁽²⁾ Interest rate on the District's Variable Rate Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2013 in a term rate mode, are calculated at the actual term rate of 1.59% through the next scheduled mandatory tender date of August 1, 2019, and for the purposes of this table, thereafter at an assumed rate of 6.00% through final maturity.

2019/2020 PRO FORMA INTEREST & SINKING FUND MANAGEMENT INDEX

Estimated Interest & Sinking Fund Balance at 8-31-2019.....	\$ 4,203,548
Estimated Income from \$0.50 I&S Tax Rate @ 95% Collected Using 2019 Estimated Taxable Assessed Valuation of \$2,707,127,028	12,858,853
Estimated Other Income	<u>100,000</u>
Total Estimated Funds Available	17,162,401
2019/20 Debt Service Requirement	<u>14,339,813*</u>
Estimated Interest & Sinking Fund Balance at 8-31-2020	\$ 2,822,588*

* Preliminary, subject to change. Does not include the maintenance tax notes.

FIVE-YEAR RECORD OF FINANCIAL OPERATIONS

The following summary of the District's results of operation reflects the District's historical performance under prior systems of school finance in Texas. For a description of the prior systems, the revised current system, and how the District's future financial performance may be affected by the revised system and ongoing litigation see "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING."

	Year Ended 8/31				
	2018	2017	2016	2015	2014
<u>REVENUE</u>					
Local Sources	\$ 38,808,630	\$27,001,265	\$23,737,946	\$21,776,665	\$18,474,173
State Sources	12,671,634	12,590,047	13,224,542	11,732,398	10,763,419
Federal Sources	<u>1,860,296</u>	<u>1,816,314</u>	<u>1,786,260</u>	<u>1,283,899</u>	<u>1,555,326</u>
Total all Revenue	48,340,560	42,397,626	38,748,748	34,792,962	30,792,918
<u>EXPENDITURES</u>					
Instruction	21,774,355	19,283,875	17,761,514	15,735,862	13,654,917
Instruction Related	2,166,585	1,951,258	1,694,152	1,554,116	2,509,871
Pupil Services	6,353,007	5,782,149	5,554,797	5,405,462	5,103,296
General Administration	1,245,822	1,239,007	1,047,250	1,150,375	879,240
Debt Service	9,496,633	9,474,548	7,730,035	7,210,697	6,281,444
Community Services	65,399	43,893	6,384	28,431	29,178
Plant Maintenance & Operation	4,111,200	3,580,541	3,324,758	3,540,754	3,192,254
Construction	2,372,571	30,410,053	4,073,286	3,106,905	6,230,727
Intergovernmental	<u>184,882</u>	<u>167,804</u>	<u>200,370</u>	<u>183,591</u>	<u>159,405</u>
Total all Expenditures	<u>47,772,454</u>	<u>71,933,128</u>	<u>41,392,546</u>	<u>37,916,193</u>	<u>38,040,332</u>
Total Other Resources and (Uses)	<u>(1,072,379)</u>	<u>492,787</u>	<u>38,109,262⁽¹⁾</u>	<u>1,998,929</u>	<u>757,145</u>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Resources Over Expenditures and Other Uses	(504,273)	(29,042,715)	35,465,464	(1,124,306)	(6,490,269)
Fund Balance Beginning of Year	10,678,948 ⁽⁴⁾	39,721,664	4,256,200	5,380,502	12,105,392
Prior Period Adjustment	<u>-0-</u>	<u>-0-</u>	<u>-0-</u>	<u>-0-</u>	<u>(234,621)</u>
Fund Balance End of Year	<u>\$10,174,675</u>	<u>\$10,678,949⁽⁴⁾</u>	<u>\$39,721,664⁽²⁾</u>	<u>\$ 4,256,200⁽³⁾</u>	<u>\$ 5,380,502</u>
General Fund Balance at End of Year	\$ 5,368,937	\$ 4,776,329	\$ 4,485,514	\$ 3,799,051	\$ 3,343,056

⁽¹⁾ Represents proceeds of the District's \$33,840,000 Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2016.

⁽²⁾ Includes unspent construction proceeds from the District's prior new money bond transactions.

⁽³⁾ Due to the District's adoption of GASB Statement No. 68 for Accounting and Reporting Pensions, which was later amended by GASB Statement No. 71 Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date during Fiscal Year 2015.

⁽⁴⁾ Difference attributable to rounding.

	Year Ended 8/31				
	2018	2017	2016	2015	2014
Assessed Valuation	\$1,966,046,733	\$1,670,234,956	\$1,403,788,766	\$1,224,736,883	\$1,081,715,260
Total Tax Rate	\$1.540	\$1.540	\$1.540	\$1.540	\$1.540
Percent of Debt Service to Total Expenditures	19.88%	13.17%	18.67%	19.02%	16.51%

Source: The District's audited financial statements.

APPENDIX B

General Information Regarding the District And Its Economy

(this page intentionally left blank)

THE DISTRICT

This Appendix contains a brief discussion of certain economic and demographic characteristics of the area in which the District is located. Information in this Appendix has been obtained from sources that are believed to be reliable, although no investigation has been made to verify the accuracy of such information. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, nor the Underwriters take responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

General

Liberty Hill Independent School District (the "District") covers 109.74 square miles. The District's 2018 population is estimated at 18,073.

Administration

Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of and are vested in a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Members of the Board serve three-year staggered terms with elections being held each year on the first Tuesday in November. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools.

Scholastic Information

Every campus is fully accredited by the Texas Education Agency. The Texas Academic Performance Reports (TAPR) pull together a wide range of information on the performance of students in each school and district in Texas every year. Performance is shown disaggregated by student groups, including ethnicity and low-income status. The reports also provide extensive information on schools and district staff, programs, and student demographics. The District and all campuses rated as "Met Standard" for the 2016 school year.

The District provides a comprehensive program of study and makes a special effort to meet the needs of all students. Program scope ranges from compensatory education to programs for talented and gifted students. Vocational education offers a variety of programs to meet the career selection, job skill and life skill needs of students in grades 7-12. A comprehensive program in special education meets the needs of students with educationally, physically and emotionally handicapping conditions.

Special population programs include both federal and State funded reading, mathematics and migrant programs, as well as programs in Bilingual/English language development and Adult Basic Education.

All schools use technology as an integral part of the educational program. Students are provided "hands-on" opportunities with computer assisted instruction, application and programming.

Books, films, equipment and periodicals are available in each campus library.

Budget and Personnel

The budget for all funds for the 2018-2019 school year is \$51 million. Local contribution 73%; State contribution 22%; Federal and other contribution 5%. The District employed 535 professional and supportive staff in 2017-18, with an annual payroll budget exceeding \$24 million.

Present Facilities

School Facility	Grade Span	Enrollment (At 12-1-2018)
Liberty Hill High School	9-12	1,231
Liberty Hill Junior High School	7-8	682
Liberty Hill Intermediate School	5-6	708
Bill Burden Elementary School	PK-4	682
Liberty Hill Elementary School	PK-4	376
Rancho Sienna Elementary School	PK-4	<u>737</u>
Total		4,416

Source: Liberty Hill ISD

Average Daily Attendance and Percentage Increase

<u>School Year</u>	<u>Membership</u>	<u>Average Daily Attendance</u>	<u>% ADA Increase (Decrease)</u>
2006-07	2,222	2,159.10	8.23
2007-08	2,364	2,296.80	6.38
2008-09	2,464	2,394.80	4.27
2009-10	2,604	2,451.20	2.36
2010-11	2,703	2,576.35	5.11
2011-12	2,739	2,630.36	2.10
2012-13	2,879	2,731.37	3.84
2013-14	3,031	2,861.82	4.78
2014-15	3,268	3,086.02	7.83
2015-16	3,492	3,325.48	7.75
2016-17	4,029	3,868.66	16.33
2017-18	4,416	4,171.63	7.83

Source: Liberty Hill ISD

GENERAL AND STATISTICAL INFORMATION

General Information

The District is located entirely in western Williamson County (the "County") in the Texas Hill Country approximately 30 miles northwest of Austin.

Within the District is the City of Liberty Hill, a retail point located on State Highway 29.

Population

<u>Census Report</u>	<u>City of Liberty Hill</u>	<u>City of Austin*</u>	<u>Williamson County</u>
2018 est.	1,665	955,094	547,545
2010	967	790,390	422,679
2000	1,409	656,562	249,967
1990	300	472,020	139,551
1980	300	345,496	76,521
1970	300	251,808	37,305

(*) Located in Travis and Williamson Counties

Area Economy

The District is an agricultural area that derives additional income from the production of limestone, lime, and building stones. The County's economy is diversified by agribusiness, manufacturing, and education. Principal sources of agricultural income include grain sorghum, cotton, wheat, hay, corn and cattle. Minerals produced in the County include oil, gas stone, sand, and gravel.

Retail sales in 2015 totaled \$21.28 billion.* The total 2015 Effective Buying Income was \$13.08 billion with a median of \$62,282 per household compared to the state median of \$53,037.*

* The Nielson Company.

Labor Force Statistics - Williamson County

	Annual Average				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Civilian Labor Force	298,992	273,363	263,171	254,964	244,841
Total Employed	<u>290,522</u>	<u>264,238</u>	<u>254,078</u>	<u>243,846</u>	<u>231,865</u>
Total Unemployed	8,470	9,125	9,093	11,118	12,946
% Unemployed	2.8%	3.3%	3.5%	4.4%	5.3%
% Unemployed (Texas)	3.5%	4.6%	5.3%	5.1%	6.3%
% Unemployed (United States)	3.5%	4.9%	4.5%	6.2%	7.4%

Source: Texas Workforce Commission - Economic Research and Analysis Department, and United States Department of Labor.

Employment and Wages by Industry - Williamson County

	Number of Employees - Fourth Quarter			
	2017	2016	2015	2014
Natural Resources and Mining	1,135	1,104	1,209	1,402
Construction	12,612	11,596	10,738	9,898
Manufacturing	12,450	12,089	11,575	11,660
Trade, Transportation & Utilities	40,834	38,851	37,748	35,951
Information	1,714	1,731	1,557	1,550
Financial Activities	8,034	7,819	7,499	7,554
Professional and Business Services	19,879	19,598	19,329	18,334
Education and Health Services	20,238	19,253	17,407	16,143
Leisure and Hospitality	21,437	20,295	19,190	17,946
Other Services	5,813	5,655	5,484	5,072
Unclassified	282	91	77	42
Federal Government	814	738	661	641
State Government	519	453	420	434
Local Government	<u>23,281</u>	<u>22,640</u>	<u>21,600</u>	<u>20,977</u>
Total Employment	169,043	161,913	154,495	147,604
Total Wages	\$2,287,986,943	\$2,120,978,122	\$2,028,008,937	\$1,843,042,197

Source: Texas Workforce Commission - Texas Labor Market Information.

Selected Major Area Employers

Williamson County has been economically stable for many years because of the industries located there. A list of the major non-governmental employers as reported by the Greater Austin Chamber of Commerce follows.

Name	Type of Operation
Employing 6,000 or More:	
Apple	Computer makers tech & admin support center
Dell	Computer technology solutions & equipment mfg/sales (Hdq.)
IBM	Computer systems, hardware, software, and chip R&D
Samsung Austin Semiconductor	Semiconductor chip manufacturing, R&D (Hdq.)
Seton Healthcare Network	Healthcare (Hdq.)
St. David's Healthcare Partnership	Healthcare (Hdq.)
Employing 2,000 - 5,999:	
Accenture	Management consulting & software development center
Amazon	Online retailer's digital product development & distribution center
Applied Materials	Semiconductor production equipment manufacturing & R&D
AT&T	Telecommunications (Hdq. of Texas ops.)
Flex	Contract electronic mfg & integrated supply chain services
Keller Realty	Residential real estate (hdq.)
Freescale Semiconductor	Semiconductor chip design & manufacturing (Hdq.)
National Instruments	Virtual instrumentation software & hardware manufacturing (Hdq.)
NXP Semiconductors	Semiconductor chip design & mfg. (Hdq.)
Wholefoods Market	Grocery retailer (Hdq.)

(this page intentionally left blank)

APPENDIX C

Audited Financial Statements

The information contained in this appendix consists of the Liberty Hill Independent School District Audited Financial Statements (the "Report") for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018.

The information presented represents only a part of the Report and does not purport to be a complete statement of the District's financial condition. Reference is made to the complete Annual Audit Report for additional information.

(this page intentionally left blank)

LIBERTY HILL
INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

By: **West, Davis & Company, LLP**
11824 Jollyville Road, Suite 100
Austin, Texas 78759
www.westdavis.com
Telephone: 512.340.0222
Email: gary@westdavis.com

Introductory Section

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Liberty Hill Independent School District
Name of School District

Williamson
County

246-908
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above named school district were reviewed and (check one) _____approved _____disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2018, at a meeting of the board of trustees of such school district on the ____ day of _____, _____.

Signature of Board Secretary

Signature of Board President

If the board of trustees disapproved of the auditors' report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is (are):
(attach list as necessary)

Financial Section

West, Davis & Company, LLP
11824 Jollyville Road, Suite 100
Austin, Texas 78759

Independent Auditors' Report

To the Board of Trustees
Liberty Hill Independent School District
Liberty Hill, Texas

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the Liberty Hill Independent School District ("the District") as of and for the year ended August 31, 2018, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditors' Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the District's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Liberty Hill Independent School District as of August 31, 2018, and the respective changes in financial position, and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Emphasis of Matter

Change in Accounting Principle

As described in Note A to the financial statements, in 2018, Liberty Hill Independent School District adopted new accounting guidance, Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 79, *Investment Pools*. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

Other Matters

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the Management's Discussion and Analysis, and budgetary comparison information and schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability and schedule of District pension contributions, and schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability and schedule of District OPEB contributions identified as Required Supplementary Information in the table of contents be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the Liberty Hill Independent School District's basic financial statements. The introductory section and combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not required parts of the basic financial statements. The schedule of expenditures of federal awards is presented for purposes of additional analysis as required by Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations* Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards*, and is also not a required part of the basic financial statements. The accompanying other supplementary information is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is also not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and other supplementary information and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and other supplementary information and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The introductory section has not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on it.

Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards*

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated December 13, 2018 on our consideration of Liberty Hill Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering Liberty Hill Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "West, Davis & Company". The script is cursive and fluid, with the company name written in a single line.

West, Davis & Company, LLP
Austin, Texas
December 13, 2018

Liberty Hill Independent School District

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

In this section of the Annual Financial and Compliance Report, we, the managers of Liberty Hill Independent School District (the District), discuss and analyze the District's financial performance for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018. Please read it in conjunction with the independent auditors' report on page 2, and the District's Basic Financial Statements, which begin on page 11. All amounts, unless otherwise indicated, are expressed in thousands of dollars.

USING THIS ANNUAL REPORT

This annual report consists of a series of financial statements. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 11 through 12). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise. Fund financial statements (starting on page 14) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the District.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 22) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The sections labeled TEA (Texas Education Agency) Required Schedules and Federal Awards Section contain data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

Reporting the District as a Whole

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations begins on page 11. Its primary purpose is to show whether the District is better off or worse off as a result of this year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets and liabilities at the end of the year while the Statement of Activities includes all the revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year. These apply the accrual basis of accounting which is the basis used by private sector companies.

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when the cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties, who share the costs of some programs, such as grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist

children with disabilities from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. All liabilities are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in them. The District's net position (the difference between assets and liabilities) provide one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position is one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall financial health of the District, however, nonfinancial factors as well should be considered, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.

In the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities, we classify the District's activities as Governmental and Business-type activities:

- Governmental activities—Most of the District's basic services are reported here, including the instruction, counseling, co-curricular activities, food services, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these activities.
- Business-type activities—The District's enterprise activities are reported here. These activities are intended to recover all or a significant portion of their costs through user fees and charges.

Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds

Fund Financial Statements

The fund financial statements begin on page 14 and provide detailed information about the most significant funds—not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the Elementary and Secondary Education Act (ESEA) from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes (like campus activities). The District's two kinds of funds—governmental and proprietary—use different accounting approaches.

- Governmental funds—Most of the District's basic services are reported in governmental funds. These use modified accrual accounting (a method that measures the receipt and disbursement of cash and all other financial assets that can be readily converted to cash) and report balances that are available for future spending. The governmental fund statements provide a detailed short-term view of the District's general operations and the basic services it provides. We describe the differences between governmental activities (reported in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities) and governmental funds in reconciliation schedules following each of the fund financial statements.
- Proprietary funds—The District reports the activities for which it charges users (whether outside customers or other units of the District) in proprietary funds using the same accounting methods employed in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities. The District maintains one proprietary fund the Panther Care enterprise fund. This fund accounts for the District's elementary school student after school care program.

The District as Trustee

Reporting the District's Fiduciary Responsibilities

The District is the trustee, or fiduciary, for money raised by student activities and scholarship programs. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in separate Statements of Fiduciary Net Position and Changes in Fiduciary Net Position on page 21. We exclude these resources from the District's other financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District is only responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes.

GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table I below) and changes in net position (Table II below) of the District's governmental and business-type activities.

Net position of the District's governmental activities decreased from (\$7 million) to (\$19.2 million). Unrestricted net position – the part of net position that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation, or other legal requirements – was a deficit of (\$13.3 million) at August 31, 2018. The decrease in governmental net position was a result of the implementation of GASB 75. More information is presented in the paragraph following Table II on the next page.

Table I
Liberty Hill Independent School District

NET POSITION
in thousands

	Governmental Activities		Business-type Activities		Total	
	2018	2017	2018	2017	2018	2017
Current and other assets	13,050	15,422	5	0	13,055	15,422
Capital assets	144,050	145,688	0	0	144,050	145,688
Total assets	157,100	161,110	5	0	157,105	161,110
Deferred Outflow Related to Pensions	2,771	3,920	0	0	2,771	3,920
Deferred Outflow Related to OPEB	186	0	0	0	186	0
Total deferred outflows	2,957	3,920	0	0	2,957	3,920
Long-term liabilities	170,899	165,939	0	0	170,899	165,939
Other liabilities	3,048	5,096	0	0	3,048	5,096
Total liabilities	173,947	171,035	0	0	173,947	171,035
Deferred Inflow Related to Pensions	807	965	0	0	807	965
Deferred Inflow Related to OPEB	4,533	0	0	0	4,533	0
Total deferred inflows	5,340	965	0	0	5,340	965
Net position:						
Invested in capital assets, net of related debt	-10,321	-6,372	0	0	-10,321	-6,372
Restricted	4,437	3,551	0	0	4,437	3,551
Unrestricted	-13,346	-4,149	5	0	-13,341	-4,149
Total net position	-19,230	-6,970	5	0	-19,225	-6,970

Table II
Liberty Hill Independent School District

CHANGES IN NET POSITION
in thousands

	Governmental Activities		Business-type Activities		Total	
	2018	2017	2018	2017	2018	2017
Revenues:						
Program revenues:						
Charges for services	1,083	1,053	0	0	1,083	1,053
Operating grants and contributions	-2,382	3,079	0	0	-2,382	3,079
General revenues:						
Maintenance and operations taxes	21,285	17,741	0	0	21,285	17,741
Debt service taxes	10,201	8,495	0	0	10,201	8,495
Grants & contributions not restricted	10,424	11,035	0	0	10,424	11,035
Investment Earnings	192	146	0	0	192	146
Miscellaneous	1,186	540	11	0	1,197	540
Total Revenues	<u>41,989</u>	<u>42,089</u>	<u>11</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>42,000</u>	<u>42,089</u>
Expenses:						
Instruction	16,181	19,857	0	0	16,181	19,857
Instructional resources & media services	515	546	0	0	515	546
Curriculum and staff development	816	1,059	0	0	816	1,059
Instructional leadership	209	335	0	0	209	335
School leadership	1,410	1,847	0	0	1,410	1,847
Guidance/counseling services	1,134	1,212	0	0	1,134	1,212
Social Work Services	71	0	0	0	71	0
Health services	253	334	0	0	253	334
Student transportation	1,025	1,220	0	0	1,025	1,220
Food services	1,690	1,670	0	0	1,690	1,670
Cocurricular/extracurricular activities	1,527	2,010	0	0	1,527	2,010
General administration	1,019	1,375	0	0	1,019	1,375
Plant maintenance and operations	3,022	3,157	0	0	3,022	3,157
Security and monitoring services	31	39	0	0	31	39
Data processing services	737	756	0	0	737	756
Community services	0	0	6	0	6	0
Debt services	5,316	6,621	0	0	5,316	6,621
Payments to JJAEP program	75	49	0	0	75	49
Other intergovernmental charges	207	185	0	0	207	185
Total Expenses	<u>35,238</u>	<u>42,272</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>35,244</u>	<u>42,272</u>

Changes in expenses for the year are not comparable to prior year due to the overall effects of GASB 75 on current year expenses. As discussed in Note A.3.m, current year on-behalf activity was negated by a total of \$5.7 million. Therefore, nearly every functional category was affected by this significant net decrease in expenses.

NET OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS (OPEB) LIABILITY (GASB 75)

During year, the District adopted GASB Statement No. 75 for Accounting and Reporting for Other Post-Employment Benefit Plans (OPEB). With GASB 75, the District must assume their proportionate share of the Net OPEB liability of the Teacher Retirement System. The District's net OPEB liability at year end totaled \$10.8 million.

THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

As the District completed this annual period, its General funds (as presented in the balance sheet on page 14) reported a fund balance of \$5.4 million, which is \$593 thousand more than last years' total of \$4.8 million. The increase in fund balance is mainly attributable to increasing student enrollment, and therefore, increased average daily attendance revenues and lower than budgeted expenditures.

The District's Debt Service fund reported a fund balance of \$4.1 million which is \$623 thousand more than last year's total of \$3.5 million. The Debt Service fund balance was more at August 31, 2018, as compared to the prior year end, due to interest payments on debt service being less than budgeted. The purpose of the Debt Service fund is to provide for the payment of bond principal and interest payments as it becomes due.

The District's other governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$730 thousand. This combined balance is \$1.7 less than the previous year. The primary reason for this change in the combined fund balance was due to capital projects expenditures.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees generally revises the District's budget based on financial updates provided by management of the District. These amendments involve moving funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs, or to react to originally unforeseen circumstances, such as unanticipated new revenues or unavoidable new costs. None of the budget amendments made during the year were considered significant.

CAPITAL ASSET AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION

Capital Assets

At the end of August 2018, the District had \$144 million (net of accumulated depreciation) invested in a broad range of capital assets, including facilities and equipment for instruction, transportation, athletics, administration, and maintenance.

Table III
Liberty Hill Independent School District

Capital Assets Net of Depreciation

in thousands

	Governmental Activities		Change
	2018	2017	
Land	3,356	2,954	402
Construction in Progress	391	0	391
Buildings	160,739	159,875	864
Furniture and Equipment	11,989	11,274	715
Total	176,475	174,103	2,372
Less Accumulated Depreciation	(32,425)	(28,415)	-4,010
Capital assets, net of depreciation	144,050	145,688	-1,638

Debt

At year-end, the District had \$141.8 million in bonds and other long-term debt outstanding versus \$146.9 last year. The decrease is primarily attributable to the District making scheduled payments on its long-term debt during the year and the refunding of \$50.2 in bonds. The refunding resulted in an economic gain of \$6.23 million.

A summary of the ending balances of long-term debt by type for both 2018 and 2017 is as follows:

Table IV
Liberty Hill Independent School District

	Outstanding Debt		
	in thousands		
	Governmental Activities		
	2018	2017	Change
General Obligation Bonds	139,645	143,987	-4,342
Notes Payable	1,384	1,561	-177
Capital Leases Payable	772	1,306	-534
Total	141,801	146,854	-5,053

ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES

The District is located in one of the fastest growing regions of the state. Continued growth is expected for years to come as the area is adjacent to Austin and major national employers and educational institutions. Assessed property values are expected to grow in the future as the area is diverse in its economic offerings.

The District's elected and appointed officials considered many factors when setting the fiscal year 2018-2019 budget and tax rates. Those factors include property values, changes in enrollment, the economy, projections of future budget years, and legislative mandates. The District has adopted a General Fund budget of \$31.9 million for the 2018-2019 fiscal year. This reflects an approximate increase of \$1,176,000 in budgeted expenditures from fiscal year 2017-2018 to fiscal year 2018-2019.

For the 2018-2019 budget year, the District has held constant its maintenance and operations tax rate at \$1.04 per hundred of taxable value. The District has the capability to call a tax ratification election which could authorize up to \$1.17 cents for maintenance and operations. The District has no current plans to call a tax ratification election. The District adopted a debt service tax rate of \$.50 for the 2018-2019 budget year in order to fund required debt payments in the coming year. The combined tax rate of the District for the 2018-2019 budget year is \$1.54 per hundred of taxable value.

CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, investors, and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's Business Office, at Liberty Hill Independent School District, 301 Forrest Street, Liberty Hill, Texas 78642, or by calling (512) 260-5580.

Basic Financial Statements

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	1	2	3
	Governmental Activities	Business-type Activities	Total
ASSETS:			
1110 <i>Cash and Cash Equivalents</i>	\$ 6,052,940	\$ 5,475	\$ 6,058,415
1120 <i>Current Investments</i>	5,656,550	--	5,656,550
1225 <i>Property Taxes Receivable (Net)</i>	320,649	--	320,649
1240 <i>Due from Other Governments</i>	1,010,264	--	1,010,264
1290 <i>Other Receivables (Net)</i>	5,142	--	5,142
1410 <i>Unrealized Expenses</i>	5,837	--	5,837
Capital Assets:			
1510 <i>Land</i>	3,356,411	--	3,356,411
1520 <i>Buildings and Improvements, Net</i>	136,347,006	--	136,347,006
1530 <i>Furniture and Equipment, Net</i>	3,382,018	--	3,382,018
1550 <i>Capital Lease Assets, Net</i>	574,138	--	574,138
1580 <i>Construction in Progress</i>	390,923	--	390,923
1000 Total Assets	157,101,878	5,475	157,107,353
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES:			
<i>Deferred Outflow Accounting Losses on Debt Refundings</i>	3,494,596	--	3,494,596
<i>Deferred Outflow Related to Pensions</i>	2,771,050	--	2,771,050
<i>Deferred Outflow Related to OPEB</i>	186,051	--	186,051
1700 Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	6,451,697	--	6,451,697
LIABILITIES:			
2110 <i>Accounts Payable</i>	183,178	--	183,178
2140 <i>Interest Payable</i>	493,805	--	493,805
2165 <i>Accrued Liabilities</i>	2,337,956	--	2,337,956
2180 <i>Due to Other Governments</i>	33,733	--	33,733
2300 <i>Unearned Revenue</i>	1,193	--	1,193
Noncurrent Liabilities:			
2501 <i>Due Within One Year</i>	3,001,717	--	3,001,717
2502 <i>Due in More Than One Year</i>	155,277,305	--	155,277,305
2540 <i>Net Pension Liability</i>	5,276,497	--	5,276,497
2545 <i>Net OPEB Liability</i>	10,837,496	--	10,837,496
2000 Total Liabilities	177,442,880	--	177,442,880
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES:			
<i>Deferred Inflow Related to Pensions</i>	806,948	--	806,948
<i>Deferred Inflow Related to OPEB</i>	4,533,345	--	4,533,345
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	5,340,293	--	5,340,293
NET POSITION:			
3200 Net Investment in Capital Assets	(10,321,024)	--	(10,321,024)
Restricted For:			
3820 <i>Federal and State Programs</i>	69,489	--	69,489
3850 <i>Debt Service</i>	4,120,178	--	4,120,178
3870 <i>Campus Activities</i>	247,538	--	247,538
3900 Unrestricted	(13,345,779)	5,475	(13,340,304)
3000 Total Net Position	\$ (19,229,598)	\$ 5,475	\$ (19,224,123)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

	1	3	4
		Program Revenues	
Data Control Codes	Functions/Programs	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions
	Expenses		
	Governmental Activities:		
11	Instruction	\$ --	\$ (1,597,025)
12	Instructional Resources and Media Services	--	(80,642)
13	Curriculum and Staff Development	--	(125,589)
21	Instructional Leadership	--	(44,812)
23	School Leadership	--	(271,058)
31	Guidance, Counseling, & Evaluation Services	--	34,291
32	Social Work Services	--	(678)
33	Health Services	--	(60,103)
34	Student Transportation	--	(208,422)
35	Food Service	965,110	605,646
36	Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	117,813	(123,807)
41	General Administration	--	(136,158)
51	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	--	(285,406)
52	Security and Monitoring Services	--	(1,048)
53	Data Processing Services	--	(87,019)
72	Interest on Long-term Debt	--	--
73	Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	--	--
95	Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Programs	--	--
99	Other Intergovernmental Charges	--	--
TG	Total Governmental Activities	1,082,923	(2,381,830)
	Business-type Activities:		
01	Panther Extended Care	--	--
TB	Total Business-type Activities	--	--
TP	Total Primary Government	\$ 1,082,923	\$ (2,381,830)
	General Revenues:		
MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes		
DT	Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service		
IE	Investment Earnings		
GC	Grants and Contributions Not Restricted to Specific Programs		
MI	Miscellaneous		
TR	Total General Revenues		
CN	Change in Net Position		
NB	Net Position - Beginning		
PA	Prior Period Adjustment		
	Net Position - Beginning, as Restated		
NE	Net Position - Ending		

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

6

7

8

Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position

<u>Governmental Activities</u>	<u>Business-type Activities</u>	<u>Total</u>
\$ (17,777,810)		\$ (17,777,810)
(595,166)		(595,166)
(941,749)		(941,749)
(254,219)		(254,219)
(1,681,359)		(1,681,359)
(1,099,369)		(1,099,369)
(71,614)		(71,614)
(313,181)		(313,181)
(1,233,836)		(1,233,836)
(118,974)		(118,974)
(1,532,681)		(1,532,681)
(1,155,665)		(1,155,665)
(3,307,307)		(3,307,307)
(32,221)		(32,221)
(823,757)		(823,757)
(5,126,177)		(5,126,177)
(189,525)		(189,525)
(75,323)		(75,323)
(206,618)		(206,618)
<u>(36,536,551)</u>		<u>(36,536,551)</u>
--	\$ (5,513)	(5,513)
--	(5,513)	(5,513)
<u>(36,536,551)</u>	<u>(5,513)</u>	<u>(36,542,064)</u>
21,284,533	--	21,284,533
10,201,323	--	10,201,323
191,958	--	191,958
10,422,866	376	10,423,242
1,186,412	10,612	1,197,024
43,287,092	10,988	43,298,080
6,750,541	5,475	6,756,016
(6,970,264)	--	(6,970,264)
(19,009,875)	--	(19,009,875)
(25,980,139)	--	(25,980,139)
<u>\$ (19,229,598)</u>	<u>\$ 5,475</u>	<u>\$ (19,224,123)</u>

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

BALANCE SHEET - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS

AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	Other Governmental Funds	98 Total Governmental Funds
ASSETS:				
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 4,761,822	\$ 523,874	\$ 767,245	\$ 6,052,941
1120 Current Investments	2,071,907	3,584,643	--	5,656,550
1225 Taxes Receivable, Net	220,746	99,903	--	320,649
1240 Due from Other Governments	899,104	711	110,449	1,010,264
1260 Due from Other Funds	133,686	--	1,690	135,376
1290 Other Receivables	3,446	--	1,696	5,142
1410 Unrealized Expenditures	5,837	--	--	5,837
1000 Total Assets	<u>8,096,548</u>	<u>4,209,131</u>	<u>881,080</u>	<u>13,186,759</u>
LIABILITIES:				
Current Liabilities:				
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ 183,178	\$ --	\$ --	\$ 183,178
2150 Payroll Deductions & Withholdings	18,103	--	--	18,103
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	2,138,423	--	15,959	2,154,382
2170 Due to Other Funds	1,690	4,708	128,978	135,376
2180 Due to Other Governments	--	28,714	5,019	33,733
2200 Accrued Expenditures	165,471	--	--	165,471
2300 Unearned Revenue	220,746	99,902	1,193	321,841
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>2,727,611</u>	<u>133,324</u>	<u>151,149</u>	<u>3,012,084</u>
FUND BALANCES:				
Restricted Fund Balances:				
3450 Federal/State Funds Grant Restrictions	--	--	69,489	69,489
3470 Capital Acquisitions & Contractual Obligations	--	--	412,904	412,904
3480 Retirement of Long-Term Debt	--	4,075,807	--	4,075,807
3490 Other Restrictions of Fund Balance	--	--	247,538	247,538
3600 Unassigned	5,368,937	--	--	5,368,937
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>5,368,937</u>	<u>4,075,807</u>	<u>729,931</u>	<u>10,174,675</u>
4000 Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 8,096,548</u>	<u>\$ 4,209,131</u>	<u>\$ 881,080</u>	<u>\$ 13,186,759</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET
TO THE STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
AUGUST 31, 2018

Total fund balances - governmental funds balance sheet	\$ 10,174,675
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Net Position are different because:	
Capital assets used in governmental activities are not reported in the funds.	144,050,496
Property taxes receivable unavailable to pay for current period expenditures are deferred in the funds.	320,648
Payables for bond principal which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(139,644,649)
The accumulated accretion of interest on capital appreciation bonds is not reported in the funds.	(5,029,902)
Payables for bond interest which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(493,805)
Payables for notes which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(1,383,968)
Bond premiums are recorded in the SNP but not in the funds.	(11,448,099)
Payables for lease principal which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(772,404)
The accounting loss on refunding bonds is not reported in the funds.	3,494,596
Recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability is not reported in the funds.	(5,276,497)
Deferred Resource Inflows related to the pension plan are not reported in the funds.	(806,948)
Deferred Resource Outflows related to the pension plan are not reported in the funds.	2,771,050
Recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability is not reported in the funds.	(10,837,496)
Deferred Resource Inflows related to the OPEB plan are not reported in the funds.	(4,533,345)
Deferred Resource Outflows related to the OPEB plan are not reported in the funds.	186,051
Rounding difference	(1)
Net position of governmental activities - Statement of Net Position	\$ <u>(19,229,598)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES****IN FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS****FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018**

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	Other Governmental Funds	98 Total Governmental Funds
REVENUES:				
5700 <i>Local and Intermediate Sources</i>	\$ 22,068,279	\$ 10,243,241	\$ 1,497,110	\$ 33,808,630
5800 <i>State Program Revenues</i>	12,144,601	157,061	369,972	12,671,634
5900 <i>Federal Program Revenues</i>	478,409	--	1,381,887	1,860,296
5020 <i>Total Revenues</i>	<u>34,691,289</u>	<u>10,400,302</u>	<u>3,248,969</u>	<u>48,340,560</u>
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 <i>Instruction</i>	19,236,630	--	903,589	20,140,219
0012 <i>Instructional Resources and Media Services</i>	625,018	--	--	625,018
0013 <i>Curriculum and Staff Development</i>	969,530	--	39,588	1,009,118
0021 <i>Instructional Leadership</i>	301,980	--	--	301,980
0023 <i>School Leadership</i>	1,864,605	--	--	1,864,605
0031 <i>Guidance, Counseling, & Evaluation Services</i>	1,178,809	--	198,367	1,377,176
0032 <i>Social Work Services</i>	65,118	--	--	65,118
0033 <i>Health Services</i>	347,928	--	--	347,928
0034 <i>Student Transportation</i>	1,282,491	--	--	1,282,491
0035 <i>Food Service</i>	--	--	1,538,954	1,538,954
0036 <i>Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities</i>	1,261,638	--	479,702	1,741,340
0041 <i>General Administration</i>	1,245,822	--	--	1,245,822
0051 <i>Facilities Maintenance and Operations</i>	3,241,792	--	12,281	3,254,073
0052 <i>Security and Monitoring Services</i>	29,818	--	--	29,818
0053 <i>Data Processing Services</i>	827,309	--	--	827,309
0071 <i>Principal on Long-term Debt</i>	710,687	1,492,208	--	2,202,895
0072 <i>Interest on Long-term Debt</i>	81,477	7,022,736	--	7,104,213
0073 <i>Bond Issuance Costs and Fees</i>	--	189,525	--	189,525
0081 <i>Capital Outlay</i>	575,747	--	1,796,824	2,372,571
0095 <i>Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative</i>				
0095 <i>Education Programs</i>	67,399	--	--	67,399
0099 <i>Other Intergovernmental Charges</i>	184,882	--	--	184,882
6030 <i>Total Expenditures</i>	<u>34,098,680</u>	<u>8,704,469</u>	<u>4,969,305</u>	<u>47,772,454</u>
1100 <i>Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)</i>				
1100 <i>Expenditures</i>	<u>592,609</u>	<u>1,695,833</u>	<u>(1,720,336)</u>	<u>568,106</u>
Other Financing Sources and (Uses):				
7911 <i>Capital-Related Debt Issued (Regular Bonds)</i>	--	47,335,000	--	47,335,000
7916 <i>Premium or Discount on Issuance of Bonds</i>	--	5,372,979	--	5,372,979
8949 <i>Other Uses</i>	--	(53,780,358)	--	(53,780,358)
7080 <i>Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)</i>	<u>--</u>	<u>(1,072,379)</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>(1,072,379)</u>
1200 <i>Net Change in Fund Balances</i>	<u>592,609</u>	<u>623,454</u>	<u>(1,720,336)</u>	<u>(504,273)</u>
0100 <i>Fund Balances - Beginning</i>	4,776,328	3,452,353	2,450,267	10,678,948
3000 <i>Fund Balances - Ending</i>	<u>\$ 5,368,937</u>	<u>\$ 4,075,807</u>	<u>\$ 729,931</u>	<u>\$ 10,174,675</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
RECONCILIATION OF THE STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES OF GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Net change in fund balances - total governmental funds	\$ (504,273)
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Activities ("SOA") are different because:	
Capital outlays are not reported as expenses in the SOA.	2,372,571
The depreciation of capital assets used in governmental activities is not reported in the funds.	(4,010,406)
To reverse fund level accrual of Teacher Retirement System on-behalf contributions.	1,285,488
Certain property tax revenues are deferred in the funds. This is the change in these amounts this year.	138,519
Repayment of bond principal is an expenditure in the funds but is not an expense in the SOA.	1,669,355
Repayment of capital lease principal is an expenditure in the funds but is not an expense in the SOA.	533,540
Refunding bond principal is an expenditure in the funds but is not an expense in the SOA.	53,780,358
The accounting loss associated with refunding is amortized in the SOA but not in the funds.	(215,033)
The accretion of interest on capital appreciation bonds is not reported in the funds.	817,239
(Increase) decrease in accrued interest from beginning of period to end of period.	41,261
To record State's total proportionate share of collective pension expense that is associated with the District.	(884,360)
The fund level accrual of Teacher Retirement System on-behalf contributions are reversed.	(1,285,488)
To increase (decrease) the State's proportionate share of pension expense.	884,360
Reverse contributions made after the prior year measurement date and before the end of the prior year.	(540,909)
Deferred Outflows for contributions made after the current measurement date & before the year end.	627,351
District contributions must be de-expended for fiscal year 2015.	540,844
The District's proportionate share of Teacher Retirement System plan wide pension expense.	4,149
Current year amortization of previous year deferred resource outflows and inflows.	(962,263)
Proceeds of bonds do not provide revenue in the SOA, but are reported as current resources in the funds.	(47,335,000)
Bond premiums are reported in the funds but not in the SOA.	(5,372,979)
Bond premiums are reported in the SOA but not in the funds.	1,334,569
Pension contributions made post measurement date but in current fiscal year.	6,564
GASB 75 required certain expenditures to be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows.	(123,177)
OPEB contributions made after the measurement date but in current FY were de-expended & reduced NPL.	184,356
OPEB expense relating to GASB 75 is recorded in the SOA but not in the funds.	3,763,906
Rounding difference	(1)
Change in net position of governmental activities - Statement of Activities	\$ <u>6,750,541</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT*STATEMENT OF NET POSITION**ENTERPRISE FUND**AUGUST 31, 2018*

Data Control Codes		Nonmajor Enterprise Fund Panther Extended Care
ASSETS:		
Current Assets:		
1110	<i>Cash and Cash Equivalents</i>	\$ 5,475
	Total Current Assets	5,475
1000	Total Assets	5,475
LIABILITIES:		
2000	Total Liabilities	--
NET POSITION:		
3900	<i>Unrestricted</i>	\$ 5,475
3000	Total Net Position	\$ 5,475

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES
 IN FUND NET POSITION - ENTERPRISE FUND
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes		Nonmajor Enterprise Fund Panther Extended Care
	OPERATING REVENUES:	
5700	Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 10,612
5800	State Program Revenues	376
5020	Total Revenues	<u>10,988</u>
	OPERATING EXPENSES:	
6100	Payroll Costs	<u>5,513</u>
6030	Total Expenses	<u>5,513</u>
1300	Change in Net Position	5,475
0100	Total Net Position - Beginning	--
3300	Total Net Position - Ending	<u>\$ 5,475</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS****PROPRIETARY FUNDS**

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

	Nonmajor Enterprise Fund Panther Extended Care
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:	
<i>Cash Received from Customers</i>	\$ 10,612
<i>Cash Received from Grants</i>	376
<i>Cash Receipts (Payments) for Quasi-external Operating Transactions with Other Funds</i>	--
<i>Cash Payments to Employees for Services</i>	(5,513)
<i>Cash Payments to Other Suppliers for Goods and Services</i>	--
<i>Cash Payments for Grants to Other Organizations</i>	--
<i>Other Operating Cash Receipts (Payments)</i>	--
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities	<u>5,475</u>
Cash Flows from Investing Activities:	
<i>Interest and Dividends on Investments</i>	--
Net Cash Provided (Used) for Investing Activities	<u>--</u>
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	5,475
Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year	--
Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year	<u>\$ 5,475</u>
Reconciliation of Operating Income to Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities:	
Operating Income (Loss)	\$ 5,475
Adjustments to Reconcile Operating Income to Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	
<i>Depreciation</i>	--
<i>Provision for Uncollectible Accounts</i>	--
Change in Assets and Liabilities:	
<i>Decrease (Increase) in Receivables</i>	--
<i>Increase (Decrease) in Payroll Deductions</i>	--
<i>Increase (Decrease) in Accrued Wages Payable</i>	--
<i>Increase (Decrease) in Accrued Expenses</i>	--
<i>Increase (Decrease) in Unearned Revenue</i>	--
Total Adjustments	<u>--</u>
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities	<u>\$ 5,475</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION****FIDUCIARY FUNDS**

AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes		Private-purpose Trust Fund	Agency Fund
		Education Foundation	Student Activity
	ASSETS:		
1110	<i>Cash and Cash Equivalents</i>	\$ 37,150	\$ 129,277
1000	Total Assets	37,150	129,277
	LIABILITIES:		
	Current Liabilities:		
2190	<i>Due to Student Groups</i>	\$ --	\$ 129,277
2300	<i>Unearned Revenues</i>	37,150	--
2000	Total Liabilities	37,150	129,277
	NET POSITION:		
3000	Total Net Position	\$ --	\$ --

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

A. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

The basic financial statements of Liberty Hill Independent School District (the "District") have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") applicable to governmental units in conjunction with the Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide ("Resource Guide"). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles.

1. Reporting Entity

The Board of School Trustees ("Board"), a seven-member group, has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The Board is elected by the public and has the exclusive power and duty to govern and oversee the management of the public schools of the District. All powers and duties not specifically delegated by statute to the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") or to the State Board of Education are reserved for the Board, and the TEA may not substitute its judgment for the lawful exercise of those powers and duties by the Board. The District receives funding from local, state and federal government sources and must comply with the requirements of those funding entities. However, the District is not included in any other governmental reporting entity and there are no component units included within the District's reporting entity.

2. Basis of Presentation, Basis of Accounting

a. Basis of Presentation

Government-wide Financial Statements: The statement of net position and the statement of activities include the financial activities of the overall government, except for fiduciary activities. Eliminations have been made to minimize the double-counting of internal activities. These statements distinguish between the governmental and business-type activities of the District. Governmental activities generally are financed through taxes, intergovernmental revenues, and other nonexchange transactions. Business-type activities are financed in whole or in part by fees charged to external parties.

The statement of activities presents a comparison between direct expenses and program revenues for the different business-type activities of the District and for each function of the District's governmental activities. Direct expenses are those that are specifically associated with a program or function and, therefore, are clearly identifiable to a particular function. The District does not allocate indirect expenses in the statement of activities. Program revenues include (a) fees, fines, and charges paid by the recipients of goods or services offered by the programs and (b) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular program. Revenues that are not classified as program revenues, including all taxes, are presented as general revenues.

Fund Financial Statements: The fund financial statements provide information about the District's funds, with separate statements presented for each fund category. The emphasis of fund financial statements is on major governmental and enterprise funds, each displayed in a separate column. All remaining governmental and enterprise funds are aggregated and reported as nonmajor funds.

Proprietary fund operating revenues, such as charges for services, result from exchange transactions associated with the principal activity of the fund. Exchange transactions are those in which each party receives and gives up essentially equal values. Nonoperating revenues, such as subsidies and investment earnings, result from nonexchange transactions or ancillary activities.

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

General Fund: This is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources of the District except those required to be accounted for in another fund.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

The Debt Service Fund includes debt service property taxes and other revenue collected to retire bond principal and interest as it becomes due. It is a budgeted fund.

In addition, the District reports the following fund types:

Private-Purpose Trust Funds: These funds are used to report trust arrangements under which principal and income benefit individuals, private organizations, or other governments not reported in other fiduciary fund types.

Agency Funds: These funds are used to report student activity funds and other resources held in a purely custodial capacity (assets equal liabilities). Agency funds typically involve only the receipt, temporary investment, and remittance of fiduciary resources to individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Fiduciary funds are reported in the fiduciary fund financial statements. However, because their assets are held in a trustee or agent capacity and are therefore not available to support District programs, these funds are not included in the government-wide statements.

b. Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting

Government-wide, Proprietary, and Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements: These financial statements are reported using the economic resources measurement focus. The government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements are reported using the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded at the time liabilities are incurred, regardless of when the related cash flows take place. Nonexchange transactions, in which the District gives (or receives) value without directly receiving (or giving) equal value in exchange, include property taxes, grants, entitlements, and donations. On an accrual basis, revenue from property taxes is recognized in the fiscal year for which the taxes are levied. Revenue from grants, entitlements, and donations is recognized in the fiscal year in which all eligibility requirements have been satisfied.

Governmental Fund Financial Statements: Governmental funds are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Under this method, revenues are recognized when measurable and available. The District considers all revenues reported in the governmental funds to be available if the revenues are collected within sixty days after year-end. Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the susceptible-to-accrual concept. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available. Expenditures are recorded when the related fund liability is incurred, except for principal and interest on general long-term debt, claims and judgments, and compensated absences, which are recognized as expenditures to the extent they have matured. General capital asset acquisitions are reported as expenditures in governmental funds. Proceeds of general long-term debt and acquisitions under capital leases are reported as other financing sources.

When the District incurs an expenditure or expense for which both restricted and unrestricted resources may be used, it is the District's policy to use restricted resources first, then unrestricted resources.

3. Financial Statement Amounts

a. Cash and Cash Equivalents

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, highly liquid investments are considered to be cash equivalents if they have a maturity of three months or less when purchased.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

b. Property Taxes

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available when they become due or past due and receivable within the current period.

Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General and Debt Service Funds are based upon historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

c. Inventories and Prepaid Items

Inventories of supplies on the balance sheet are stated at weighted average cost, while inventories of food commodities are recorded at market values supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services. Inventory items are recorded as expenditures when they are consumed. Supplies are used for almost all functions of activity, while food commodities are used only in the food service program. Although commodities are received at no cost, their fair market value is supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services and recorded as inventory and deferred revenue when received. When requisitioned, inventory and deferred revenue are relieved, expenditures are charged, and revenue is recognized for an equal amount. Inventories also include plant maintenance and operation supplies as well as instructional supplies.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items.

d. Capital Assets

Purchased or constructed capital assets are reported at cost or estimated historical cost. Donated capital assets are recorded at their estimated fair value at the date of the donation. The cost of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets' lives are not capitalized. A capitalization threshold of \$5,000 is used.

Capital assets are being depreciated using the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Asset Class</u>	<u>Estimated Useful Lives</u>
Infrastructure	30
Buildings	50
Building Improvements	20
Vehicles	2-15
Office Equipment	3-15
Computer Equipment	3-15

e. Deferred Outflows and Inflows of Resources

In addition to assets, the statements of financial position (the government-wide and proprietary Statements of Net Position and governmental funds balance sheet) will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, deferred outflows of resources, represents a consumption of net position and/or fund balance that applies to one or more future periods and so will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until then.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

In addition to liabilities, the statements of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, deferred inflows of resources, represents an acquisition of net position that applies to one or more future periods and so will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time.

f. Receivable and Payable Balances

The District believes that sufficient detail of receivable and payable balances is provided in the financial statements to avoid the obscuring of significant components by aggregation. Therefore, no disclosure is provided which disaggregates those balances.

There are no significant receivables which are not scheduled for collection within one year of year end.

g. Interfund Activity

Interfund activity results from loans, services provided, reimbursements or transfers between funds. Loans are reported as interfund receivables and payables as appropriate and are subject to elimination upon consolidation. Services provided, deemed to be at market or near market rates, are treated as revenues and expenditures or expenses. Reimbursements occur when one fund incurs a cost, charges the appropriate benefiting fund and reduces its related cost as a reimbursement. All other interfund transactions are treated as transfers. Transfers In and Transfers Out are netted and presented as a single "Transfers" line on the government-wide statement of activities. Similarly, interfund receivables and payables are netted and presented as a single "Internal Balances" line of the government-wide statement of net position.

h. Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires the use of management's estimates.

i. Data Control Codes

Data Control Codes appear in the rows and above the columns of certain financial statements. The TEA requires the display of these codes in the financial statements filed with TEA in order to ensure accuracy in building a statewide database for policy development and funding plans.

j. Fund Balances - Governmental Funds

Fund balances of the governmental funds are classified as follows:

Nonspendable Fund Balance - represents amounts that cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form (such as inventory or prepaid insurance) or legally required to remain intact (such as notes receivable or principal of a permanent fund).

Restricted Fund Balance - represents amounts that are constrained by external parties, constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Committed Fund Balance - represents amounts that can only be used for a specific purpose because of a formal action by the District's Board of Trustees. Committed amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the Board of Trustees removes those constraints by taking the same type of formal action. Committed fund balance amounts may be used for other purposes with appropriate due process by the Board of Trustees. Commitments are typically done through adoption and amendment of the budget. Committed fund balance amounts differ from restricted balances in that the constraints on their use do not come from outside parties, constitutional provisions, or enabling legislation.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Assigned Fund Balance - represents amounts which the District intends to use for a specific purpose, but that do not meet the criteria to be classified as restricted or committed. Intent may be stipulated by the Board of Trustees or by an official or body to which the Board of Trustees delegates the authority. Specific amounts that are not restricted or committed in a special revenue, capital projects, debt service or permanent fund are assigned for purposes in accordance with the nature of their fund type or the fund's primary purpose. Assignments within the general fund convey that the intended use of those amounts is for a specific purpose that is narrower than the general purposes of the District itself.

Unassigned Fund Balance - represents amounts which are unconstrained in that they may be spent for any purpose. Only the general fund reports a positive unassigned fund balance. Other governmental funds might report a negative balance in this classification because of overspending for specific purposes for which amounts had been restricted, committed or assigned.

k. Net Position Flow Assumption

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted (e.g., restricted bond or grant proceeds) and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted net position and unrestricted net position in the government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted net position to have been depleted before unrestricted net position is applied.

l. Fund Balance Flow Assumptions

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted and unrestricted resources (the total of committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance). In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted, committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance in the governmental fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted fund balance to have been depleted before using any of the components of unrestricted fund balance. Further, when the components of unrestricted fund balance can be used for the same purpose, committed fund balance is depleted first, followed by assigned fund balance. Unassigned fund balance is applied last.

m. Negative Operating Grants and Contributions - Statement of Activities

Expense activity is required to be recorded by districts who are participants in cost-sharing pension and OPEB benefit plans with a special funding situation where non-employer contributing entities (NECE) also participate in contributions to the plans. TRS-retirement and TRS-care benefit plans are both cost-sharing plans with special funding situations. Therefore, on-behalf expense activity of the NECE must be recorded at the government-wide level of reporting on the Statement of Activities in accordance with GASB 68 and 75.

During the year under audit, the NECE expense was negative due to changes in benefits within the TRS-care plan. The accrual for the proportionate share of that expense was a negative on-behalf revenue and negative on-behalf expense. This resulted in negative revenue for operating grants and contributions on the Statement of Activities.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Following are the effects on the Statement of Activities as a result of the negative on-behalf accruals recorded:

	Operating Grants and Contributions As Reported	Negative On-Behalf Accruals	Operating Grants and Contributions (Excluding On- Behalf Accruals)
11 - Instruction	\$ (1,597,025)	\$ (3,502,982)	\$ 1,905,957
12 - Instructional Resources and Media Services	(80,642)	(113,120)	32,478
13 - Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	(125,589)	(179,367)	53,778
21 - Instructional Leadership	(44,812)	(62,861)	18,049
23 - School Leadership	(271,058)	(380,224)	109,166
31 - Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	34,291	(230,142)	264,433
32 - Social Work Services	(678)	(951)	273
33 - Health Services	(60,103)	(84,309)	24,206
34 - Student (Pupil) Transportation	(208,422)	(292,362)	83,940
35 - Food Services	605,646	--	605,646
36 - Extracurricular Activities	(123,807)	(173,669)	49,862
41 - General Administration	(136,158)	(190,993)	54,835
51 - Facilities Maintenance and Operations	(285,406)	(406,900)	121,494
52 - Security and Monitoring Services	(1,048)	(1,470)	422
53 - Data Processing Services	(87,019)	(122,065)	35,046
61 - Community Services	--	--	--
62 - School District Administrative Support Services	--	--	--
	<u>\$ (2,381,830)</u>	<u>\$ (5,741,415)</u>	<u>\$ 3,359,585</u>

4. Pensions

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS' fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

5. New Accounting Standards Adopted

In fiscal year 2018, the District adopted a new statement of financial accounting standards issued by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB):

Statement No. 75, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefit Plans Other Than Pension Plans

The primary objective of this Statement is to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments for postemployment benefits other than pensions (other postemployment benefits or OPEB). It also improves information provided by state and local governmental employers about support for OPEB that is provided by other entities.

This Statement replaces the requirements of Statements No. 45, Accounting and Financial Reporting by Employers for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions, as amended, and No. 57, OPEB measurements by Agent Employers and Agent Multiple-Employer Plans, for OPEB.

The financial statements and note disclosures have been updated for the affects of the adoption of GASB Statement No. 75.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

B. Compliance and Accountability

1. Finance-Related Legal and Contractual Provisions

In accordance with GASB Statement No. 38, "Certain Financial Statement Note Disclosures," violations of finance-related legal and contractual provisions, if any, are reported below, along with actions taken to address such violations:

<u>Violation</u>	<u>Action Taken</u>
None reported	Not applicable

2. Deficit Fund Balance or Fund Net Position of Individual Funds

Following are funds having deficit fund balances or fund net position at year end, if any, along with remarks which address such deficits:

<u>Fund Name</u>	<u>Deficit Amount</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
None reported	Not applicable	Not applicable

C. Deposits and Investments

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust with the District's agent bank approved pledged securities in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance.

1. Cash Deposits:

At August 31, 2018, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (cash, certificates of deposit, and interest-bearing savings accounts included in temporary investments) was \$6,058,415 and the bank balance was \$6,645,059. The District's cash deposits at August 31, 2018 and during the year ended August 31, 2018, were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name.

2. Investments:

The District is required by Government Code Chapter 2256, The Public Funds Investment Act, to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, and (9) bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

The Public Funds Investment Act ("Act") requires an annual audit of investment practices. Audit procedures in this area conducted as a part of the audit of the basic financial statements disclosed that in the areas of investment practices, management reports and establishment of appropriate policies, the District adhered to the requirements of the Act. Additionally, investment practices of the District were in accordance with local policies.

The Act determines the types of investments which are allowable for the District. These include, with certain restrictions, 1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas, 2) certificates of deposit,

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

3) certain municipal securities, 4) securities lending program, 5) repurchase agreements, 6) bankers acceptances, 7) mutual funds, 8) investment pools, 9) guaranteed investment contracts, and 10) commercial paper.

- * Not all assets meeting the definition of an investment are required to be reported at fair value. Including among excepted investments are certain investments held by 2a7 like external investment pools. As detailed below, the District has invested funds in specific 2a7 like external investment pools that are valued at amortized cost and not subject to the fair value hierarchy levels.

The District's investment at August 31, 2018 is shown below.

<u>Investment or Investment Type</u>	<u>Rating</u>	<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Using Level</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>
Lone Star Investment Pool	AAAm	20 days	*	\$ 5,656,550
Total Investments				<u>\$ 5,656,550</u>

3. Analysis of Specific Deposit and Investment Risks

GASB Statement No. 40 requires a determination as to whether the District was exposed to the following specific investment risks at year end and if so, the reporting of certain related disclosures:

a. Credit Risk

Credit risk is the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations. The ratings of securities by nationally recognized rating agencies are designed to give an indication of credit risk. At year end, the District was not significantly exposed to credit risk.

At August 31, 2018, the District's investments, other than those which are obligations of or guaranteed by the U. S. Government, are rated as to credit quality as above.

b. Custodial Credit Risk

Deposits are exposed to custodial credit risk if they are not covered by depository insurance and the deposits are uncollateralized, collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution, or collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

Investment securities are exposed to custodial credit risk if the securities are uninsured, are not registered in the name of the government, and are held by either the counterparty or the counterparty's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

At year end, the District was not exposed to custodial credit risk.

c. Concentration of Credit Risk

This risk is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of a government's investment in a single issuer. At year end, the District was not exposed to concentration of credit risk.

d. Interest Rate Risk

This is the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to interest rate risk.

e. Foreign Currency Risk

This is the risk that exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Investment Accounting Policy

The District's general policy is to report money market investments and short-term participating interest-earning investment contracts at amortized cost and to report nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts using a cost-based measure. However, if the fair value of an investment is significantly affected by the impairment of the credit standing of the issuer or by other factors, it is reported at fair value. All other investments are reported at fair value unless a legal contract exists which guarantees a higher value. The term "short-term" refers to investments which have a remaining term of one year or less at time of purchase. The term "nonparticipating" means that the investment's value does not vary with market interest rate changes. Nonnegotiable certificates of deposit are examples of nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts.

Public Funds Investment Pools

Public funds investment pools in Texas ("Pools") are established under the authority of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 79 of the Texas Government Code, and are subject to the provisions of the Public Funds Investment Act (the "Act"), Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. In addition to other provisions of the Act designed to promote liquidity and safety of principal, the Act requires Pools to: 1) have an advisory board composed of participants in the pool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with the pool and are qualified to advise the pool; 2) maintain a continuous rating of no lower than AAA or AAA-m or an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and 3) maintain the market value of its underlying investment portfolio within one half of one percent of the value of its shares.

The District's investments in Pools are reported at an amount determined by the fair value per share of the pool's underlying portfolio, unless the pool is 2a7-like, in which case they are reported at share value. A 2a7-like pool is one which is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") as an investment company, but nevertheless has a policy that it will, and does, operate in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

Lone Star

The Lone Star Investment Pool (Lone Star) is a public funds investment pool created pursuant to the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 791, and the Public Funds Investment Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 2256. Lone Star is administered by First Public, a subsidiary of the Texas Association of School Boards (TASB), with Standish and American Beacon Advisors managing the investment and reinvestment of Lone Star's assets. State Street Bank provides custody and valuation services to Lone Star. All of the board of trustees' eleven members are Lone Star participants by either being employees or elected officials of a participant. Lone Star has established an advisory board composed of both pool members and non-members. Lone Star is rated AAAm by Standard and Poor's and operated in a manner consistent with the the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940. The District is invested in the Government Overnight Fund of Lone Star which seeks to maintain a net asset value of one dollar. Lone Star has 3 different funds: Government Overnight, Corporate Overnight and Corporate Overnight Plus. Government Overnight, Corporate Overnight and Corporate Overnight Plus maintain a net asset value of one dollar.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

D. Capital Assets

Capital asset activity for the year ended August 31, 2018, was as follows:

	Beginning Balances	Increases	Decreases	Ending Balances
Governmental activities:				
<i>Capital assets not being depreciated:</i>				
Land	\$ 2,954,331	\$ 402,080	\$ --	\$ 3,356,411
Construction in progress	--	390,923	--	390,923
Total capital assets not being depreciated	2,954,331	793,003	--	3,747,334
<i>Capital assets being depreciated:</i>				
Buildings and improvements	159,874,511	864,866	--	160,739,377
Furniture and equipment	8,063,338	714,702	--	8,778,040
Assets under capital lease	3,210,527	--	--	3,210,527
Total capital assets being depreciated	171,148,376	1,579,568	--	172,727,944
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings and improvements	(21,417,231)	(2,975,140)	--	(24,392,371)
Furniture and equipment	(4,836,302)	(559,720)	--	(5,396,022)
Assets under capital lease	(2,160,843)	(475,546)	--	(2,636,389)
Total accumulated depreciation	(28,414,376)	(4,010,406)	--	(32,424,782)
Total capital assets being depreciated, net	142,734,000	(2,430,838)	--	140,303,162
Governmental activities capital assets, net	\$ 145,688,331	\$ (1,637,835)	\$ --	\$ 144,050,496

Depreciation was charged to functions as follows:

Instruction	\$ 2,265,693
Instructional Resources and Media Services	73,480
Curriculum and Staff Development	113,983
Instructional Leadership	35,502
School Leadership	219,212
Guidance, Counseling, & Evaluation Services	138,267
Social Work Services	7,759
Health Services	41,113
Student Transportation	158,282
Food Services	150,776
Extracurricular Activities	148,325
General Administration	146,465
Plant Maintenance and Operations	381,121
Security and Monitoring Services	3,505
Data Processing Services	97,263
Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Education Programs	7,924
Other intergovernmental charges	21,736
	<u>\$ 4,010,406</u>

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

E. Interfund Balances and Activities

1. Due To and From Other Funds

Balances due to and due from other funds at August 31, 2018, consisted of the following:

Due To Fund	Due From Fund	Amount	Purpose
General Fund	Debt Service Fund	\$ 4,708	Temporary advances
General Fund	Other Governmental Funds	128,978	Temporary advances
Other Governmental Funds	General Fund	1,690	Temporary advances
	Total	<u>\$ 135,376</u>	

All amounts due are scheduled to be repaid within one year.

F. Long-Term Obligations

1. Long-Term Obligation Activity

Long-term obligations include debt and other long-term liabilities. Changes in long-term obligations for the year ended August 31, 2018, are as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Increases	Decreases	Ending Balance	Amounts Due Within One Year
<u>Governmental activities:</u>					
General obligation bonds	\$ 143,986,857	\$ 47,335,000	\$ 51,677,208	\$ 139,644,649	\$ 2,480,001
Notes	1,561,115	--	177,147	1,383,968	183,505
Capital leases	1,305,944	--	533,540	772,404	338,211
Bond premium/discount	7,409,689	5,372,979	1,334,569	11,448,099	--
Accretion on CAB's	5,847,141	970,553	1,787,792	5,029,902	--
	<u>160,110,746</u>	<u>53,678,532</u>	<u>55,510,256</u>	<u>158,279,022</u>	<u>3,001,717</u>
Net Pension Liability *	5,828,054	(10,713)	540,844	5,276,497	--
Net OPEB Liability *	19,133,052	(8,165,988)	129,568	10,837,496	--
Total governmental activities	<u>\$ 185,071,852</u>	<u>\$ 45,501,831</u>	<u>\$ 56,180,668</u>	<u>\$ 174,393,015</u>	<u>\$ 3,001,717</u>
		Due within one year		\$ 3,001,717	
		Due in more than one year		155,277,305	
				<u>\$ 158,279,022</u>	

* Other long-term liabilities

The funds typically used to liquidate other long-term liabilities in the past are as follows:

Liability	Activity Type	Fund
Net Pension Liability *	Governmental	General
Net OPEB Liability *	Governmental	General

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

The following tables display total principal debt outstanding by issuance as of year end.

Date of Issue	Description	Interest Rates	Original Issue	Final Maturity Date	Debt Principal	CAB Accretion
1/1/2011	Bldg & Ref Ser 2011	5.00	\$ 87,564,926	8/1/2040	\$ 36,016,947	\$ 4,593,944
3/15/2007	Ref Ser 2013	2.51 to 6.00	9,595,000	2/1/2025	6,760,000	--
11/1/2014	Ref Ser 2014	5.00	15,717,702	8/1/2034	15,717,702	435,958
7/1/2016	Sch Bldg Ser 2016	2.00 to 4.00	33,840,000	2/1/2045	33,815,000	--
12/1/2017	Ref Ser 2017	2.00 to 5.00	47,335,000	8/1/2035	47,335,000	--
Total Bonds Payable					<u>\$ 139,644,649</u>	<u>\$ 5,029,902</u>

Date of Issue	Description	Interest Rates	Original Issue	Maturity Date	Debt Principal
8/5/2010	Tax Notes Ser 2010	1.75	\$ 1,163,064	8/1/2025	\$ 578,968
4/1/2015	Tax Warrants Ser 2015	0.85 to 2.37	1,000,000	8/1/2025	805,000
Total Notes Payable					<u>\$ 1,383,968</u>

Year of Issue	Description	Interest Rates	Original Issue	Maturity Date	Debt Principal
2011	Note Payable Buses	4	\$ 179,572	9/19/2019	\$ 28,570
2013	Note Payable Buses	3	185,256	9/15/2021	85,096
2014	Note Payable Buses	3	283,700	9/15/2021	127,356
2015	Note Payable Buses	3	396,351	9/15/2022	167,153
2016	Note Payable Buses	3.438	277,275	9/15/2023	200,076
2017	Cap Lease Dell Fin	4	492,786	6/15/2019	164,153
Total Capital Leases Payable					<u>\$ 772,404</u>

2. Debt Service Requirements

Debt service requirements on long-term debt at August 31, 2018, are as follows:

Year Ending August 31,	General Obligation Bonds		
	Principal	Interest	Total
2019	\$ 2,480,001	\$ 7,890,375	\$ 10,370,376
2020	1,467,006	8,140,494	9,607,500
2021	1,494,940	8,124,810	9,619,750
2022	3,460,000	6,064,800	9,524,800
2023	3,650,000	5,893,250	9,543,250
2024-2028	21,715,000	26,742,675	48,457,675
2029-2033	28,440,000	20,773,400	49,213,400
2034-2038	35,262,702	17,178,823	52,441,525
2039-2043	31,880,000	5,199,650	37,079,650
2044-2045	9,795,000	391,700	10,186,700
Totals	<u>\$ 139,644,649</u>	<u>\$ 106,399,977</u>	<u>\$ 246,044,626</u>

Year Ending August 31,	Notes		
	Principal	Interest	Total
2019	\$ 183,505	\$ 25,898	\$ 209,403
2020	189,886	23,046	212,932
2021	191,292	19,880	211,172
2022	197,723	16,524	214,247
2023	204,179	12,826	217,005
2024-25	417,383	13,261	430,644
Totals	<u>\$ 1,383,968</u>	<u>\$ 111,435</u>	<u>\$ 1,495,403</u>

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

3. Advance Refunding of Debt

GASB Statement No. 7, "Advance Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt," provides that refunded debt and assets placed in escrow for the payment of related debt service be excluded from the financial statements. As of August 31, 2018, outstanding balances of bond issues that have been refunded and defeased in-substance by placing existing assets and the proceeds of new bonds in an irrevocable trust to provide for all future debt service payments are as follows.

<u>Bond Issue</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Series 1997	\$ 2,090,000
Series 2005	6,250,000
Series 2006	18,565,000
Series 2011	50,682,702
Total	<u>\$ 77,587,702</u>

In December 2017, the District issued \$33.84 million in Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds to refund a portion of the District's Series 2011 bonds. The proceeds of the refunding bonds net of the related debt service costs amounted to \$53.78 million and were deposited with an escrow agent to purchase direct obligations of the United States. As a result of the refunding, the District decreased its aggregate debt service payment to maturity by \$8.64 million and realized an economic gain (difference between the present value of debt service payments on the old debt and the new debt) of \$6.23 million. The accounting loss (\$3.6 million) along with \$5.7 million in premium will be deferred and amortized over the life of the refunding bonds.

4. Capital Leases

Commitments under capitalized lease agreements for facilities and equipment provide for minimum future lease payments as of August 31, 2018, as follows:

<u>Year Ending August 31:</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
2019	\$ 338,231	\$ 30,566	\$ 368,797
2020	150,480	15,960	166,440
2021	155,622	9,742	165,364
2022	85,304	4,424	89,728
2023	42,767	1,470	44,237
Total Minimum Rentals	<u>\$ 772,404</u>	<u>\$ 62,162</u>	<u>\$ 834,566</u>

G. Risk Management

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts, theft, damage or destruction of assets, errors and omissions, injuries to employees, and natural disasters. During fiscal year 2018, the District purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

H. Pension Plan

1. Plan Description

The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67, and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

2. Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detail information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <https://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

3. Benefits Provided

TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs, can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description in (1.) above.

4. Contributions

Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83rd Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 through 2017. The 84th Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

Contribution Rates

	2017	2018
Member	7.7%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (NECE - State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
District's 2018 Employer Contributions	\$ 627,351	
District's 2018 Member Contributions	\$ 1,820,333	
NECE 2017 On-Behalf Contributions to District	\$ 1,185,920	

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools and state agencies including TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education and junior colleges, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers (public school, junior college, other entities or the State of Texas as the employer for senior universities and medical schools) are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources, a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.
- When the employing district is a public junior college or junior college district, the employer shall contribute to the retirement system an amount equal to 50% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to:

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district or charter school does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

5. Actuarial Assumptions

The total pension liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial evaluation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	8%
Inflation	2.5%
Salary Increases including inflation	3.5% to 9.5%
Payroll Growth Rate	2.5%
Benefit Changes during the year	None
Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are based primarily on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

6. Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability.

The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2017 are summarized below:

Teacher Retirement System of Texas Asset Allocation and Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return As of August 31, 2017			
Asset Class	Target Allocation*	Long-term Expected Geometric Real Rate of Return	Expected Contribution to Long-term Portfolio Returns **
Global Equity			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
Stable Value			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	0%	1.8%	0.0%
Stable Value Hedge Funds	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	0.0%
Real Return			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	0.0%
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy & Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0%	1.2%	0.0%
Risk Parity			
Risk Parity	5%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflation Expectation			2.2%
Alpha			1.0%
Total	100%		8.7%

* Target allocations are based on the FY2014 policy model. Infrastructure was moved from Real Assets to Energy and Natural Resources in FY2017, but the reallocation does not affect the long term expected geometric real rate of return or expected contribution to long-term portfolio returns.

** The expected contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

7. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate 7%	Discount Rate 8%	1% Increase in Discount Rate 9%
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability	\$ 8,895,131	\$ 5,276,497	\$ 2,263,396

8. Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

At August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$5,276,497 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 5,276,497
State's proportionate share that is associated with District	<u>11,594,208</u>
Total	<u>\$ 16,870,705</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the District's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 through August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.0165021%. which was an increase (decrease) of 0.0010793259 from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation - There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions of other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period:

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized pension expense of \$1,835,975 and revenue of \$884,360 for support provided by the State.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

At August 31, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS' deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

(The amounts below will be the cumulative layers from the current and prior years combined)

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 77,198	\$ 284,555
Changes in actuarial assumptions	240,353	137,596
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	--	384,540
Changes in proportion and difference between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	1,826,148	257
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date [to be calculated by employer]	627,351	--
Total	<u>\$ 2,771,050</u>	<u>\$ 806,948</u>

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year Ended August 31	Pension Expense Amount
2019	\$ 249,250
2020	\$ 586,062
2021	\$ 223,367
2022	\$ 116,448
2023	\$ 124,855
Thereafter	\$ 36,769

I. Defined Other Post-Employment Benefit Plans

1. Plan Description

The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined Other Post-Employment Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered through a trust by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

2. OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Components of the net OPEB liability of the TRS-Care plan as of August 31, 2017 are as follows:

<u>Net OPEB Liability:</u>	<u>Total</u>
Total OPEB liability	\$ 43,885,784,621
Less: plan fiduciary net position	<u>399,535,986</u>
Net OPEB liability	<u>\$ 43,486,248,635</u>
Net position as a percentage of total OPEB liability	0.91%

3. Benefits Provided

TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage (TRS-Care 1), at no cost to all retirees from public schools, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible retirees and their dependents not enrolled in Medicare may pay premiums to participate in one of two optional insurance plans with more comprehensive benefits (TRS-Care 2 and TRS-Care 3). Eligible retirees and dependents enrolled in Medicare may elect to participate in one of two Medicare health plans for an additional fee. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system. The Board of Trustees is granted the authority to establish basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants as well as to amend benefit terms as needed under Chapter 1575.052. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes, including automatic COLAs.

The premium rates for the optional health insurance are based on years of service of the member. The schedule below shows the monthly rates for the average retiree with Medicare Parts A&B coverage, with 20 to 29 years of service for the basic plan and the two optional plans:

Monthly TRS-Care Plan Premium Rates Effective September 1, 2016 - December 31, 2017			
	TRS-Care 1 Basic Plan	TRS-Care 2 Optional Plan	TRS-Care 3 Optional Plan
Retiree*	\$ --	\$ 70	\$ 100
Retiree and Spouse	20	175	255
Retiree* and Children	41	132	182
Retiree and Family	61	237	337
Surviving Children Only	28	62	82

* or surviving spouse

4. Contributions

Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature, and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The TRS-Care plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for TRS-Care is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the State, active employees and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS board of trustees does not have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state's contribution rate which is 1.0% of the employee's salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee's rate which is .65% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25 percent or not more than 0.75 percent of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

Contribution Rates		
	2017	2018
Active Employee	0.65%	0.65%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (NECE) - State	1.00%	1.25%
Employers	0.55%	0.75%
Federal/Private Funding Remitted by Employers	1.00%	1.25%
Current fiscal year District contributions		\$ 184,356
Current fiscal year Member contributions		\$ 153,665
2017 measurement year NECE contributions	\$ 205,129	

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to, regardless of whether they participate in the TRS-Care OPEB program. When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS-Care a monthly surcharge of \$535 per retiree.

TRS-Care received supplemental appropriations from the State of Texas as the NECE in the amount of \$15.6 million in fiscal year 2017 and \$182.6 million in fiscal year 2018.

5. Actuarial Assumptions

The total OPEB liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

The actuarial valuation of TRS-Care is similar to the actuarial valuations performed for the pension plan, except that the OPEB valuation is more complex. All of the demographic assumptions, including mortality, and most of the economic assumptions are identical to those adopted by the Board in 2015 and are based on the 2014 actuarial experience study of TRS.

The active mortality rates were based on 90 percent of the RP-2014 Employee Mortality Tables for males and females. The post-retirement mortality rates were based on the 2015 TRS of Texas Healthy Pensioner Mortality Tables.

The following assumptions and other inputs used for members of TRS-Care are identical to the assumptions used in the August 31, 2017 TRS pension actuarial valuation:

Rates of Mortality	General Inflation
Rates of Retirement	Wage Inflation
Rates of Termination	Expected Payroll Growth
Rates of Disability Incidence	

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Additional Actuarial Methods and Assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Inflation	2.50%
Discount Rate *	3.42% *
Aging Factors	Based on plan specific experience
Expenses	Third-party administrative expenses related to the delivery of health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claims costs.
Payroll Growth Rate	2.50%
Projected Salary Increases **	3.50% to 9.50% **
Healthcare Trend Rates ***	4.50% to 12.00% ***
Election Rates	Normal Retirement: 70% participation prior to age 65 and 75% participation after age 65
Ad Hoc Post-Employment Benefit Changes	None

*Source: Fixed income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federal tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index's "20-year Municipal GO AA Index" as of August 31, 2017.

**Includes inflation at 2.50%

***Initial trend rates are 7.00% for non-Medicare retirees; 10.00% for Medicare retirees and 12.00% for prescriptions for all retirees. Initial trend rates decrease to an ultimate trend rate of 4.50% over a period of 10 years.

6. Discount Rate

A single discount rate of 3.42% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of 0.44% in the discount rate since the previous year. Because the plan is essentially a "pay-as-you-go" plan, there are no investments and the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position was projected not to be able to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability. The source of the municipal bond rate was fixed-income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federally tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index's "20-year Municipal GO AA Index" as of August 31, 2017.

7. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following schedule shows the impact on the net OPEB liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used in measuring the net OPEB liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (2.42%)	Current Single Discount Rate (3.42%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (4.42%)
District's proportionate share of net OPEB liability	\$ 12,790,936	\$ 10,837,496	\$ 9,267,371

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

8. Healthcare Cost Trend Rates Sensitivity Analysis

The following presents the net OPEB liability of the plan using the assumed healthcare cost trend rate, as well as what the net OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using a trend rate that is 1% less than and 1% greater than the assumed healthcare cost trend rate:

	1% Decrease	Current Healthcare Cost Trend Rate	1% Increase
District's proportionate share of net OPEB liability	\$ 9,023,298	\$ 10,837,496	\$ 13,217,952

9. OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEBs

At August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$10,837,496 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net OPEB liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability	\$ 10,837,496
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	\$ 17,157,678
Total	\$ 27,995,174

The net OPEB liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total OPEB liability used to calculate the net OPEB liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net OPEB liability was based on the District's contributions to their OPEB plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 through August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the District's proportion of the collective net OPEB liability was 0.0249217%.

Since this is the first year of implementation, the District does not have the proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

The Notes to the Financial Statements for August 31, 2016 for TRS stated that the change in proportion was immaterial a therefore, disregarded this year.

10. Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation.

The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected the measurement of the total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period:

- Significant plan changes were adopted during the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will exist (instead of three), and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. The health plan changes triggered changes to several of the assumptions, including participation rates, retirement rates, and spousal participation rates.
- The August 31, 2016 valuation had assumed that the savings related to the Medicare Part D reimbursements would phase out by 2022. This assumption was removed for the August 31, 2017 valuation. Although there is uncertainty regarding these federal subsidies, the new assumption better reflects the current substantive plan. This change was unrelated to the plan amendment and its impact was included as an assumption change in the reconciliation of the total OPEB liability. This change significantly lowered the OPEB liability.
- The discount rate changed from 2.98% as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42% as of August 31, 2017. This change lowered total OPEB liability.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

The Affordable Care Act includes a 40% excise tax on high-cost health plans known as the "Cadillac tax." In this valuation the impact of this tax has been calculated as a portion of the trend assumption. Assumptions and methods used to determine the impact of the Cadillac Tax include:

- a. 2018 thresholds of \$850/\$2,292 were indexed annually by 2.50%.
- b. Premium data submitted was not adjusted for permissible exclusions to the Cadillac Tax.
- c. There were no special adjustments to the dollar limit other than those permissible for non-Medicare retirees over 55.

Results indicate that the value of the excise tax would be reasonably represented by a 25 basis-point addition to the long-term trend rate assumption.

Future actuarial measurements may differ significantly from the current measurements due to such factors as the following: plan experience differing from that anticipated by the economic or demographic assumptions; changes in economic or demographic assumptions; increases or decreases expected as part of the natural operation of the methodology used for these measurements; and changes in plan provision or applicable law.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized OPEB expense of \$(9,382,144) and revenue of \$(5,741,415) for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflow of Resources	Deferred Inflow of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ --	\$ 226,241
Changes in actuarial assumptions	--	4,307,104
Differences between projected and actual investment earnings	1,646	--
Changes in proportion and difference between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	49	--
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	184,356	
	<u>\$ 186,051</u>	<u>4,533,345</u>

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

Year ended August 31,	Amount
2019	\$ (597,956)
2020	\$ (597,956)
2021	\$ (597,956)
2022	\$ (597,956)
2023	\$ (598,367)
Thereafter	\$ (1,541,459)

J. Employee Health Care Coverage

During the year employees of the District were covered by a state-wide plan, TRS Active Care. The District paid premiums of \$300 per month per employee for TRS Active Care.

Employees, at their option may authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependent coverage. The Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) manages TRS Active Care. The Plan is administered by Aetna.

The latest financial information on the state-wide plan is available from TRS (see note on pension plan).

K. Self-Insurance Fund

The District participates in a workers' compensation plan through a Fixed Cost/Loss Fund Program administered by Claims Administrative Services, Inc. (CAS). The District's ultimate liability is the ending liability in its loss fund. CAS has excess insurance for the pool, and the current self-insured retention is \$1 million.

A reconciliation of the estimated claim liability is as follows:

	Beginning Liability	Estimated Current Year Claims	Claim Payments	Ending Liability
<u>Year ended August 31,</u>				
2018	\$ 165,472	\$ 111,350	\$ 122,434	\$ 154,388

L. Unemployment Compensation Pool

During the year, the District provided unemployment compensation coverage to its employees through participation in the TASB Risk Management Fund (the Fund). The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. The Fund's Unemployment Compensation Program is authorized by Section 22.005 of the Texas Education Code and Chapter 172 of the Texas Local Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties.

The Fund meets its quarterly obligation to the Texas Workforce Commission. Expenses are accrued monthly until the quarterly payment has been made. Expenses can be reasonably estimated; therefore, there is no need for specific or aggregate stop loss coverage for the Unemployment Compensation pool. For the year ended August 31, 2018, the Fund anticipates that the District has no additional liability beyond the contractual obligation for payment of contribution. The Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's Board of Trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2017 are available on the TASB Risk Management Fund website and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

M. Commitments and Contingencies

1. Contingencies

The District participates in grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectibility of any related receivable may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying basic financial statements for such contingencies.

2. Litigation

No reportable litigation was pending against the District at August 31, 2018.

N. Prior Period Adjustment

During fiscal year 2018, the District adopted GASB Statement No. 75 for Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions. With GASB 75, the District must assume their proportionate share of the Net OPEB liability of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. Adoption of GASB 75 required a prior period adjustment to report the effect of GASB 75 retroactively. The prior period adjustment totaled \$ (19,009,875) which resulted in a restated beginning net position balance of \$ (25,980,139).

O. Subsequent Events

Subsequent to year end but prior to the date of these financial statements on November 6, 2018 voters approved the issuance of \$98,600,000 in school building bonds for school facilities and the levying of a tax in payment thereof.

APPENDIX D

Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel

(this page intentionally left blank)



Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP
300 Convent Street, Suite 2100
San Antonio, Texas 78205-3792
United States

Tel +1 210 224 5575
Fax +1 210 270 7205
nortonrosefulbright.com

DRAFT 1/8/19

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the “Liberty Hill Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019” (the *Bonds*), dated February 1, 2019, in the aggregate original principal amount of \$_____, we have reviewed the legality and validity of the issuance thereof by the Liberty Hill Independent School District (the *Issuer*). The Bonds are issuable in fully registered form only, in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a Stated Maturity). The Bonds have Stated Maturities of February 1, 2020 through 2049, unless redeemed prior to Stated Maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the face of the Bonds. Interest on the Bonds accrues from the dates, at the rates, in the manner, and is payable on the dates, all as provided in the order (the *Order*) authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order.

WE HAVE SERVED AS BOND COUNSEL for the Issuer solely to pass upon the legality and validity of the issuance of the Bonds under the laws of the State of Texas and with respect to the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the sufficiency of the security for or the marketability of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the Issuer’s Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America. In rendering the opinions herein we rely upon (1) original or certified copies of the proceedings of the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, including the Order; (2) customary certifications and opinions of officials of the Issuer; (3) certificates executed by officers of the Issuer relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the Bonds and certain other funds of the Issuer, and to certain other facts solely within the knowledge and control of the Issuer; and (4) such other documentation, including an examination of the Bond executed and delivered initially by the Issuer, and such matters of law as we deem relevant to the matters discussed below. In such examination, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements and information contained in such certificates. We express no opinion concerning any effect on the following opinions which may result from changes in law effected after the date hereof.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP is a limited liability partnership registered under the laws of Texas.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright Australia, Norton Rose Fulbright Canada LLP and Norton Rose Fulbright South Africa Inc are separate legal entities and all of them are members of Norton Rose Fulbright Verein, a Swiss verein. Norton Rose Fulbright Verein helps coordinate the activities of the members but does not itself provide legal services to clients. Details of each entity, with certain regulatory information, are available at nortonrosefulbright.com.

Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of “LIBERTY HILL INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019”

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Bonds have been duly authorized and issued in conformity with the laws of the State of Texas now in force and that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions described therein, except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity. The Bonds are payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the Issuer.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that, assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the Issuer with the provisions of the Order and in reliance upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate of even date herewith pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds, under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) interest on the Bonds will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the *Code*), of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, pursuant to section 103 of the *Code*, and (2) interest on the Bonds will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

Financial Advisory Services
Provided By:

SAMCO CAPITAL MARKETS, INC.